

Business Transaction Protocol

Version 1.0.9.4

BTP 1.1 Working Draft 04, 26 October 2004

Document identifier:

business_transaction-btp-1.1-spec-wd-04

Location:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/business_transaction/

Editor:

Peter Furniss, Choreology Ltd. <<mailto:peter.furniss@choreology.com>>
(for versions 1.0 and 1.1)

Co-authors:

Sanjay Dalal, BEA Systems (for version 1.0)
Tony Fletcher, Choreology Ltd (for version 1.0)
Alastair Green, Choreology Ltd (for version 1.0)
Bob Haugen, Choreology Ltd. (for version 1.1)
Alex Ceponkus, individual (for versions 1.0 and 1.1)
Bill Pope, individual (for version 1.0)

Abstract:

The Business Transaction Protocol (BTP) is a carrier-neutral protocol to allow coordination of application work between multiple autonomous, cooperating participants. It defines protocol exchanges to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. This consistency may be defined *a priori*: all the work is confirmed or none is (an atomic business transaction or atom); or it can be determined by application intervention in the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive business transaction or cohesion). The protocol is defined in terms of abstract messages schematized in XML. This specification defines communications protocol bindings to SOAP but also allows the carriage of BTP messages over other communication protocols.

BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

Status:

This is working draft 4 of the revision of Committee Specification BTP 1.0 (June 2002), in preparation for BTP 1.1. This draft includes all agreed resolutions and the proposed resolution for issue maint-17 (currently under ballot) as in working draft 3. The OASIS template has been applied and the non-technical material has been updated. This has involved substantial changes to the appearance, and some reordering of sections (e.g. glossary, appendices).

Committee members should send comments on this specification to the business-transaction@lists.oasis-open.org list. Others should subscribe to and send comments to the business-transaction-comment@lists.oasis-open.org list. To subscribe, send an email message to business-transaction-comment-request@lists.oasis-open.org with the word "subscribe" as the body of the message.

44 For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to
45 implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to
46 the Intellectual Property Rights section of the Business Transactions TC web page
47 (<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transaction/>).

Table of Contents

49	Introduction	8
50	1 Structure of this specification	9
51	2 Conventions and terminology	11
52	2.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style	11
53	2.2 Glossary	11
54	3 Conceptual Model	18
55	3.1 Concepts	18
56	3.1.1 Example Core	18
57	3.1.2 Business transactions	19
58	3.1.3 External Effects	20
59	3.1.4 Two-phase outcome	21
60	3.1.5 Actors and roles	21
61	3.1.6 Superior:Inferior relationship	21
62	3.1.7 Business Transaction Trees	22
63	3.1.8 Atoms and Cohesions	24
64	3.1.9 Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers	25
65	3.2 Business transaction lifecycle	25
66	3.2.1 Business Transaction creation	25
67	3.2.2 Business Transaction propagation	26
68	3.2.3 Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)	27
69	3.2.4 "Checking" and context-reply	28
70	3.2.5 Message sequence	29
71	3.2.6 Control of inferiors	33
72	3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set	36
73	3.2.8 Confirm-set of intermediates	40
74	3.3 Optimisations and variations	43
75	3.3.1 Spontaneous prepared	43
76	3.3.2 One-shot	43
77	3.3.3 Resignation	45
78	3.3.4 One-phase confirmation	45
79	3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions	46
80	3.4 Recovery and failure handling	47
81	3.4.1 Types of failure	47
82	3.4.2 Persistent information	47
83	3.4.3 Recovery messages	48
84	3.4.4 Redirection	49
85	3.4.5 Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit	50
86	3.4.6 Contradictions and hazard	50
87	3.5 Relation of BTP to application and Carrier Protocols	52
88	3.6 Other elements	53
89	3.6.1 Identifiers	53
90	3.6.2 Addresses	54

91	3.6.3 Qualifiers	54
92	3.6.4 Lists	55
93	4 Actors, Roles and Relationships	56
94	4.1 Relationships	56
95	4.2 Roles	57
96	4.3 Roles involved in the Outcome Relationships	58
97	4.3.1 Superior	58
98	4.3.2 Inferior	59
99	4.3.3 Enroller	60
100	4.3.4 Participant	60
101	4.3.5 Sub-coordinator	61
102	4.3.6 Sub-composer	61
103	4.4 Roles involved in the Control Relationships	61
104	4.4.1 Decider	61
105	4.4.2 Coordinator	62
106	4.4.3 Composer	62
107	4.4.4 Terminator	62
108	4.4.5 Initiator	63
109	4.4.6 Factory	63
110	4.5 Other roles	64
111	4.5.1 Redirector	64
112	4.5.2 Status Requestor	64
113	4.6 Summary of relationships	65
114	5 Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts	66
115	5.1 Addresses	66
116	5.2 Request/response pairs	67
117	5.3 Compounding messages	67
118	5.4 Extensibility	69
119	5.5 Messages	69
120	5.5.1 Qualifiers	69
121	5.6 Messages not restricted to outcome or Control Relationships.	70
122	5.6.1 CONTEXT	70
123	5.6.2 CONTEXT_REPLY	71
124	5.6.3 REQUEST_STATUS	72
125	5.6.4 STATUS	73
126	5.6.5 FAULT	75
127	5.6.6 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES	77
128	5.7 Messages used in the Outcome Relationships	77
129	5.7.1 ENROL	77
130	5.7.2 ENROLLED	78
131	5.7.3 RESIGN	79
132	5.7.4 RESIGNED	80
133	5.7.5 PREPARE	80
134	5.7.6 PREPARED	81

135	5.7.7 CONFIRM	82
136	5.7.8 CONFIRMED	83
137	5.7.9 CANCEL	84
138	5.7.10 CANCELLED	84
139	5.7.11 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	85
140	5.7.12 HAZARD	86
141	5.7.13 CONTRADICTION	87
142	5.7.14 SUPERIOR_STATE	88
143	5.7.15 INFERIOR_STATE	89
144	5.7.16 REDIRECT	91
145	5.8 Messages used in Control Relationships	92
146	5.8.1 BEGIN	92
147	5.8.2 BEGUN	93
148	5.8.3 PREPARE_INFERIORS	94
149	5.8.4 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	96
150	5.8.5 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	98
151	5.8.6 CANCEL_TRANSACTION	99
152	5.8.7 CANCEL_INFERIORS	100
153	5.8.8 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	101
154	5.8.9 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	102
155	5.8.10 INFERIOR_STATUSES	103
156	5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages	104
157	5.9.1 CONTEXT & Application Message	104
158	5.9.2 CONTEXT_REPLY & Application Message	105
159	5.9.3 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL	105
160	5.9.4 CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED	106
161	5.9.5 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & Application Message (& PREPARED)	106
162	5.10 Standard qualifiers	107
163	5.10.1 Transaction timelimit	107
164	5.10.2 Inferior timeout	107
165	5.10.3 Minimum inferior timeout	108
166	5.10.4 Inferior name	109
167	5.10.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants	109
168	5.10.6 Expected-time-till-state-change	110
169	6 State Tables	111
170	6.1 Status queries	111
171	6.2 Decision events	111
172	6.3 Disruptions – failure events	112
173	6.4 Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication mechanism	112
174	6.5 Meaning of state table events	113
175	6.6 Persistent information	116
176	6.7 Superior state table	119
177	6.8 Inferior state table	124
178	7 Persistent information	130

179	8	XML representation of Message Set	131
180	8.1	Field types	131
181	8.1.1	Addresses	131
182	8.1.2	Qualifiers	132
183	8.1.3	Identifiers	132
184	8.1.4	Message References	132
185	8.2	Messages	132
186	8.2.1	CONTEXT	132
187	8.2.2	CONTEXT_REPLY	132
188	8.2.3	REQUEST_STATUS	133
189	8.2.4	STATUS	133
190	8.2.5	FAULT	133
191	8.2.6	ENROL	134
192	8.2.7	ENROLLED	135
193	8.2.8	RESIGN	135
194	8.2.9	RESIGNED	135
195	8.2.10	PREPARE	135
196	8.2.11	PREPARED	136
197	8.2.12	CONFIRM	136
198	8.2.13	CONFIRMED	136
199	8.2.14	CANCEL	137
200	8.2.15	CANCELLED	137
201	8.2.16	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	137
202	8.2.17	HAZARD	137
203	8.2.18	CONTRADICTION	138
204	8.2.19	SUPERIOR_STATE	138
205	8.2.20	INFERIOR_STATE	138
206	8.2.21	REDIRECT	138
207	8.2.22	BEGIN	139
208	8.2.23	BEGUN	139
209	8.2.24	PREPARE_INFERIORS	139
210	8.2.25	CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	140
211	8.2.26	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED	140
212	8.2.27	CANCEL_TRANSACTION	140
213	8.2.28	CANCEL_INFERIORS	140
214	8.2.29	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED	141
215	8.2.30	REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	141
216	8.2.31	INFERIOR_STATUSES	141
217	8.3	Standard qualifiers	142
218	8.3.1	Transaction timelimit	142
219	8.3.2	Inferior timeout	142
220	8.3.3	Minimum inferior timeout	142
221	8.3.4	Inferior name	142
222	8.3.5	Cancel-on-zero-participants	142

223	8.3.6 Expected-time-till-state-change	143
224	8.4 Compounding of Messages	143
225	8.5 XML Schemas	143
226	8.5.1 XML schema for BTP messages	143
227	8.5.2 XML schema for standard qualifiers	143
228	9 Carrier Protocol Bindings	144
229	9.1 Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma	144
230	9.2 Bindings for request/response Carrier Protocols	145
231	9.2.1 Request/response exploitation rules.....	146
232	9.3 SOAP Binding	147
233	9.3.1 Example scenario using SOAP binding	149
234	9.4 SOAP + Attachments Binding	150
235	9.4.1 Example using SOAP + Attachments binding	151
236	9.5 11.5 WSDL-friendly one-way binding	152
237	10 Conformance.....	154
238	11 References.....	156
239	11.1 Normative	156
240	Appendix A. Acknowledgments	157
241	Appendix B. Revision History	158
242	Appendix C. Notices	159
243	Appendix D. Node State Information Serialisation	160
244	D.1 Abstract Format for Node State Information	160
245	D.2 Informal XML for Node State Information.....	162
246	D.3 XML schema for Node State Information	163
247		

Introduction

BTP is designed to allow coordination of application work between multiple participants owned or controlled by autonomous organizations. BTP uses a two-phase outcome coordination protocol to ensure the overall application achieves a consistent result. BTP permits the consistent outcome to be defined *a priori*: all the work is confirmed or none is (an atomic business transaction or atom) or it can be determined by application intervention into the selection of the work to be confirmed (a cohesive business transaction or cohesion).

BTP's ability to coordinate between services offered by autonomous organizations makes it ideally suited for use in a Web Services environment. For this reason this specification defines communications protocol bindings which target the emerging Web Services arena, while preserving the capacity to carry BTP messages over other communication protocols. Protocol message structure and content constraints are schematized in XML, and message content is encoded in XML instances.

BTP allows great flexibility in the implementation of business transaction participants. Such participants enable the consistent reversal of the effects of atoms. For example, BTP participants may use recorded before- or after-images, or compensation operations to provide the "roll-forward, roll-back" capacity which enables their subordination to the overall outcome of an atomic business transaction.

BTP is an interoperation protocol which defines the roles which software agents (actors) may occupy, the messages that pass between such actors, and the obligations upon and commitments made by actors-in-roles. It does not define the programming interfaces to be used by application programmers to stimulate message flow or associated state changes.

BTP is based on a permissive and minimal approach, where constraints on implementation choices are avoided. The protocol also tries to avoid unnecessary dependencies on other standards, with the aim of lowering the hurdle to implementation.

The OASIS Business Transaction Technical Committee began its work at an inaugural meeting in San Jose, Calif. on 13 March 2001, and version 1.0 of this specification was endorsed as a Committee Specification by a unanimous vote on 16th May 2002. The TC revised the specification in the light of feedback and implementation experience to form this present specification of BTP 1.1.

The BT Technical Committee has consciously avoided specifying the integration of BTP with security standards or technology. It is assumed that all BTP actors are within a trust domain or some separate specification defines the integration with security mechanisms.

Part 1. Purpose and Features of BTP

1 Structure of this specification

This specification document includes, in Part 1, an explanation and description of the conceptual model of BTP, and, in Part 2, a fully normative specification of the protocol.

The use and definition of terms in the model can be regarded as authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. In case of (unintended) disagreement between the parts, Part 2 takes precedence over Part 1.

Part 1 contains:

- This structure description;
- A description of the typographic and other conventions used in the document;
- A glossary that provides succinct definitions of terms used in the document;
- Conceptual Model.

Part 2 contains the following sections:

- Actors, roles and relationships: defines the model entities used in the specification, their relationships to each other and indicates the correspondence of these to real implementation constructs. This section also lists which messages are sent and received for each role.
- Abstract message set: defines a set of abstract messages that are exchanged between software agents performing the various roles to create, progress and complete the relationships between those roles. For each abstract message the parameters are defined and the associated “contract” is stated. The contract defines the meaning of the message in terms of what the receiver can infer of the sender’s state and the intended effect on the receiver. This section does not itself specify a particular encoding or representation of the messages nor a single mechanism for communicating the messages.
- State tables: specifies the state transitions for the Superior and Inferior roles, detailing when particular messages may be sent and when internal decisions may be made that affect the state.
- XML representation: defines an XML representation of the message set. Other representations of the message set, or parts of it are possible; these may or may not be suitable for interoperation between heterogeneous implementations. This section uses an informal syntax to the structure of the BTP messages and references the XML schemas which are separate documents. These separate XML documents should be considered a normative part of this specification, as if they were part of this document. They are presented as separate documents to avoid possible inconsistencies due to formatting and copying.
- Carrier protocol bindings: defines a “carrier binding proforma” that details the information required to specify the mapping to a particular carrier protocol such that independent implementations can interoperate. The proforma requires an identification for the binding, the nature of the addressing information used with the binding, how the messages are represented and encoded and how they are carried (e.g. which carrier protocol messages or fields they are in) and may include other requirements.
- Using the carrier protocol proforma, this section fully specifies bindings to SOAP 1.1, using the XML representation of the abstract message set. This section references separate XML documents containing WSDL definitions. These documents should be considered integral, but non-normative parts of this specification.
- Conformance definitions: defines combinations of facilities (expressed as roles) that an implementation can declare it supports.

326 Following Part 2 there are several appendices. The only technical appendix is the informational
327 appendix D which defines a format for the serialised state information of a BTP node. This is a
328 first step towards enabling the migration of the transaction coordination roles, which is an
329 important feature for scalable transaction systems.
330

2 Conventions and terminology

2.1 Typographical and Linguistic Conventions and Style

The initial letters of words in terms which are defined (at least in their substantive or infinitive form) in the Glossary are capitalized whenever the term used with that exact meaning, thus:

- Cancel
- Participant
- Application Message

The first occurrence of a word defined in the Glossary is given in bold, thus:

Coordinator

Such words may be given in bold in other contexts (for example, in section headings or captions) to emphasize their status as formally defined terms.

The names of abstract BTP protocol messages are given in upper-case throughout:

- BEGIN
- CONTEXT
- RESIGN

The values of elements within a BTP protocol message are indicated thus:

- BEGIN/atom

BTP protocol messages that are related semantically are joined by an ampersand:

- BEGIN/atom & CONTEXT

BTP protocol messages that are transmitted together in a compound are joined by a + sign:

- ENROL + VOTE

XML schemata and instances are given in Courier and are shaded:

```
<btp:begin> ... </btp:begin>
```

The key words **must**, **must not**, **required**, **shall**, **shall not**, **should**, **should not**, **recommended**, **may**, and **optional** in lowercase bold in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

2.2 Glossary

Actor

An entity that executes procedures, a software agent. (See also BTP Actor)

Address

An identifier for an endpoint.

Application

An Actor, which uses the Business Transaction Protocol (in the context of this specification).

Also, a group of such Actors, which may be distributed, that perform a common purpose.

(When used in phrases such as “determined by the Application”, it is not relevant to BTP whether this is determined by the owner of a single system or is explicitly part of the

368 Contract that defines the distributed collaborative application. When it is necessary to
369 distinguish the responsibilities of a single party, the term "Application Element" is used.)

370 **Application Element**

371 An Actor that communicates, using Application Protocols, with other Application
372 Elements, as part of an overall distributed application. A single system may contain more
373 than one Application Element.

374 **Application Message**

375 A message produced by an Application Element and consumed by an Application
376 Element.

377 **Application Operation**

378 An operation, which is started when an Application Message arrives.

379 **Appropriate**

380 In accordance with a pertinent contract or specification.

381 **Atom**

382 A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a BTP Node (which may have only
383 one member), all of which will receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous
384 outcome. That is, they will be issued instructions to all Confirm or all Cancel.

385 **Atomic Business Transaction**

386 A complete Business Transaction that follows the atom rules for every BTP Node in the
387 Transaction Tree over space and time, so that all the participants in the transaction will
388 receive instructions that will result in a homogeneous outcome. That is, they will be
389 issued instructions to all Confirm or all Cancel.

390 **Become Prepared**

391 Ensure that of a set of procedures is capable of being successfully instructed to Cancel
392 or to Confirm.

393 **BTP Actor**

394 A software entity, or agent, that is able to take part in Business Transaction Protocol
395 exchanges i.e. that sends or receives BTP messages. A BTP Actor may be capable of
396 only playing a single Role, or of playing several different roles concurrently and / or
397 sequentially. A BTP Actor may be involved in one, or more, transactions, concurrently
398 and / or sequentially.

399 **BTP Address**

400 A compound address consisting of three parts. The first part, the "binding name",
401 identifies the binding to a particular Carrier Protocol – some bindings are specified in this
402 document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the
403 "binding address", is meaningful to the Carrier Protocol itself, which will use it for the
404 communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part,
405 "additional information", is not used or understood by the Carrier Protocol. The
406 "additional information" may be a structured value.

407 **BTP Element**

408 A BTP Actor that supports an Application Element (or elements) but is not itself
409 concerned with Application Messages or semantics.

410 **(Business) Application Protocol**

411 The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences used to effect a change in
412 the state of a business relationship.

413 **(Business) Application System**

414 A system that contains one or more business applications, and resources such as volatile
415 and persistent storage for business state information. It may also contain other things
416 such as an operating system and BTP Elements.

417 **Business relationship**

418 A business relationship is any distributed state held by the parties, which is subject to
419 contractual constraints agreed by those parties.

420 **Business Transaction**

421 A set of state changes that occur, or are desired, in computer systems controlled by
422 some set of parties, and these changes are related in some application defined manner.
423 A Business Transaction is subject to, and a part of, a business relationship. (BTP
424 assumes that the parties involved in a Business Transaction have distinct and
425 autonomous Application Systems, which do not require knowledge of each others'
426 implementation or internal state representations. Access to such loosely coupled
427 systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.)

428 **Business Transaction Protocol (BTP)**

429 The messages, their meanings and their permitted sequences defined in this
430 specification. Its purpose is to provide the interactions (or signalling) required to
431 coordinate the effects of Application Protocol to achieve a Business Transaction.

432 **Cancel**

433 Process a counter effect for the current effect of a set of procedures. There are a
434 number of different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

435 **Carrier Protocol**

436 A protocol, which defines how the transmission of BTP messages occur.

437 **Client**

438 An Actor, which sends Application Messages to services.

439 **Cohesion**

440 A set of participants, which are the direct inferiors of a BTP Node that may receive
441 instructions that may result in different outcomes for each participant. That is they will be
442 issued instructions to Confirm or Cancel according to the application logic. Participants
443 may resign or be instructed to Cancel until the Confirm set is fixed. Once the Confirm set
444 for a Cohesion is fixed, then all participants in the Confirm set are treated atomically.
445 That is they will all be instructed to Confirm unless one, or more, Cancel in which case all
446 will be instructed to Cancel. All participants not in the Confirm set will be instructed to
447 Cancel.

448 **Cohesive Business Transaction**

449 A complete Business Transaction for which at least one BTP Node over space and time
450 follows the cohesion rules. The other BTP Nodes in the Transaction Tree of a Cohesive
451 Business Transaction may follow either the cohesion rules or the atom rules.

452 **Confirm**

453 Ensure that the effect of a set of procedures is completed. There are a number of
454 different ways that this may be achieved in practice.

455 **Contract**

456 Any rule, agreement or promise which constrains an Actor's behaviour and is known to
457 any other Actor, and upon which any other knowing Actor may rely.

458 **Control Relationship**

459 The Application Element:BTP Element relationships that create the nodes of the
 460 Transaction Tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

461 **Coordinator**

462 A BTP Actor, which is the top BTP node of a transaction and decides the outcome of its
 463 immediate branches according to the Atom rules defined in this specification. It has a
 464 lifetime, which is coincident with that of the Atom. A coordinator can issue instructions to
 465 prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A
 466 coordinator is identified by its transaction-identifier. A coordinator must also have a BTP
 467 Address to which participants can send BTP messages.

468 **Counter-effect**

469 An appropriate effect intended to counteract a Provisional Effect.

470 **Decider**

471 The top BTP Node of a Transaction Tree, a composer or a coordinator (so called
 472 because the Terminator can only request confirmation – the Decider makes the final
 473 determination). The term can always be interpreted as “Composer or Coordinator”.

474 It is the Role at the other end of a Control Relationship to a Terminator.

475 **Delivery Parameter**

476 A parameter of an abstract message that is concerned with the transmission of the
 477 message to its target or the transmission of an immediate reply.. Distinguished from
 478 Payload Parameter.

479 **Endpoint**

480 A sender or receiver.

481 **Enroller**

482 The BTP Actor Role that informs a superior of the existence of an inferior.

483 **Factory**

484 The BTP Actor Role that creates transaction contexts and deciders.

485 **Final Effect**

486 An appropriate effect intended to complete and finalise a Provisional Effect

487 **Inferior**

488 The end of a BTP Node to BTP Node relationship governed by the outcome protocol that
 489 is topologically further from the top of the Transaction Tree.

490 **Inferior-Address**

491 The address used to communicate with an Actor playing the Role of an Inferior.

492 **Inferior-identifier**

493 A globally unambiguous identification of a particular Inferior within a single transaction
 494 (represented as an URI or equivalent).

495 **Initiator**

496 The BTP Actor Role (an Application Element) that starts a transaction.

497 **Intermediate**

498 A BTP Node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to
 499 interposed.

500 **Interposed**

501	A BTP Node that is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator. An alternative term to
502	intermediate.
503	Message
504	A datum, which is produced and then consumed.
505	Node
506	BTP Node, Business Transaction Tree Node, Transaction Tree Node: A logical entity that
507	is associated with a single transaction. A BTP Node is a composer, a coordinator, a sub-
508	coordinator, a sub-composer, or a participant.
509	Network Node: A computer system or program that hosts one or more BTP Actors (and
510	thus, often, BTP Nodes)
511	Operation
512	A procedure, which is started by a receiver when a message arrives at it.
513	Outcome
514	A decision to either Cancel or Confirm.
515	Outcome Relationship
516	The Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP Actors within the Transaction Tree)
517	and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it.
518	Participant
519	A participant is part of an Application System that also contains one or more applications,
520	which manipulate resources. It is a Role of a BTP Actor that is (or is equivalent to) a set
521	of procedures, which is capable of receiving instructions from another BTP Actor to
522	prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These signals are used by the application(s) to determine
523	whether to effect (Confirm) or counter effect (Cancel) the results of Application
524	Operations. A participant must also have a BTP Address, to which these instructions will
525	be delivered, in the form of BTP messages. A participant is identified by an inferior-
526	identifier.
527	Payload Parameter
528	A parameter of an abstract message that is will be received and processed or retained by
529	the receiving BTP Actor. The various identifier parameters are considered Payload
530	Parameters . Distinguished from Delivery Parameter.
531	Peer
532	The other party in a two-party relationship, as in Superior to Inferior, or Sender to
533	Receiver.
534	Provisional Effect
535	The changes induced by the incomplete or complete processing of a set of procedures by
536	an Actor, which are subject to later completion or Counter-effecting. The Provisional
537	Effect may or may not be observable by other Actors.
538	Receiver
539	The consumer of a message.
540	Responders-identifier
541	An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a
542	superior-identifier, or an inferior-identifier according to the nature of the Role in a BTP
543	Actor that is responding to a received message.
544	Role

545 The participation of a software agent in a particular relationship in a particular Business
546 Transaction. The software agent performing a Role is termed an Actor.

547 **Sender**

548 The producer of a message.

549 **Service**

550 An Actor (an Application Element), which on receipt of Application Messages, may start
551 an Appropriate Application Operation. For example, a process that advertises an
552 interface allowing defined RPCs (remote procedure calls) to be invoked by a remote
553 client.

554 **Status Requestor**

555 The BTP Actor Role that requests the status of another BTP Actor.

556 **Sub-composer**

557 An Actor, which is not the top BTP Node of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its
558 superior and decides the outcome of its immediate branches according to the cohesive
559 rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of the
560 Cohesion. A sub-composer can issue instructions to prepare, Cancel and Confirm on
561 individual branches. These instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-
562 composer must also have at least one BTP Address to which lower nodes can send BTP
563 messages.

564 **Sub-coordinator**

565 An Actor, which is not the top BTP Node of a transaction. It receives an outcome from its
566 superior and propagates the outcome to its immediate branches according to the Atom
567 rules defined in this specification. It has a lifetime, which is coincident with that of this
568 Atom. A sub-coordinator can issue instructions to prepare, Cancel and Confirm. These
569 instructions take the form of BTP messages. A sub-coordinator must also have at least
570 one BTP Address to which lower BTP Nodes can send BTP messages.

571 **Superior**

572 The BTP Role that will accept enrolments of Inferiors and subsequently inform the Inferior
573 of the Outcome applicable to it.

574 A Superior will be one of Composer, Coordinator, Sub-composer, or Sub-coordinator.

575 A Superior is considered to be a Superior even if it currently has no enrolled Inferiors.

576 **Superior-address**

577 The set of BTP addresses used to communicate with an Actor playing the Role of a
578 Superior.

579 **Superior-identifier**

580 A globally unambiguous identifier of a particular Superior within a particular transaction
581 (represented as an URI or equivalent).

582 **Target-identifier**

583 An identifier carried in a BTP message that can be interpreted as transaction-identifier, a
584 superior-identifier, or an inferior identifier according to the nature of the Role in a BTP
585 Actor that receives this identifier.

586 **Terminator**

587 A BTP Role performed by an Application Element communicating with a Decider to
588 control the completion of the Business Transaction. Frequently will be identical to the
589 Initiator, but distinguished because the control of the Business Transaction can be
590 passed between Application Elements.

591 **Transaction**

592 A complete unit of work as defined by an application. A transaction starts when a part of
593 the distributed transaction first initiates some work that is to be a part of a new
594 transaction. The Transaction Tree may grow and shrink over time and (logical) space. A
595 transaction completes when all the participants in a transaction have completed (that is
596 have replied to their Confirm or Cancel instruction).

597 **Transaction Tree**

598 A pattern of BTP Nodes that provides the coordination of a distributed application
599 transaction. There is single top BTP Node (a Decider) that interacts with the initiating
600 application (which is a part of a distributed application). The Decider BTP Node has one,
601 or more Outcome Relationships with other BTP Nodes (sub-composer, sub-coordinator,
602 or participant BTP Nodes). Any intermediate BTP Nodes (Sub-composer or Sub-
603 coordinator nodes) have exactly one relationship up the tree in which they act as Inferior,
604 and one, or more, relationships down the tree in which they act as Superior. Participants
605 are leaves of the tree. That is they have exactly one relationship up the tree in which
606 they act as Inferior and no down tree relationships.

607 **Transaction-identifier**

608 A globally unambiguous identifier for a particular a Decider (represented as an URI or
609 equivalent). A Decider is the top BTP Node of the transaction and thus this identifier also
610 unambiguously identifies the transaction. Often identical to the Superior-identifier of the
611 Decider in its Role as Superior, though the protocol does not require this.

612 **Transmission**

613 The passage of a message from a sender to a receiver.

614

3 Conceptual Model

This section introduces the concepts of BTP. Its use and definition of terms can be regarded as authoritative but should not be taken to restrict implementations or uses of BTP. Part 2 of the specification is fully normative and in case of disagreement takes precedence over statements or examples in this section.

3.1 Concepts

BTP is designed to make minimal assumptions about the implementation structure and the properties of the **Carrier Protocols**. This allows BTP to be bound to more than one Carrier Protocol. BTP implementations built in quite different ways should be able to interoperate if they are bound to the same Carrier Protocol. This flexibility requires that much of the text is abstract and may be difficult to visualise in the absence of a particular implementation pattern or Carrier Protocol. To aid understanding some possible implementation examples are presented in the following text.

3.1.1 Example Core

An advanced manufacturing company (*Manufacturer A*) orders the parts and services it needs on-line. It has existing relationships with parts suppliers and providers of services such as shipping and insurance. All of the communications between these organizations is via XML messages. The interactions of these business transactions include:

- *Manufacturer A's* production scheduling system sends an Order message to a *Supplier*.
- The *Supplier's* order processing system sends back an order confirmation with the details of the order.
- *Manufacturer A* orders delivery from a *Shipper* for the ordered parts.
- The *Shipper* evaluates the request and based on its truck schedule it sends back a positive or negative reply.
- Some shipments need to be insured based on their value, where they are shipped from, and method of transportation. *Manufacturer A* sends an Order message to an *Insurer* when this is necessary.
- The *Insurer* responds with a bid or a no-bid response.

Problems have arisen with some of these interactions.

- *Manufacturer A* had ordered parts from a supplier and contacted shipper M about delivering the goods. Shipper M was busy and agreed to the contract, but only for a scheduled delivery the day after the parts were needed. By the time this was addressed, it was too late to schedule alternate shipping.
- There were communications problems with supplier Z that resulted in an order not being confirmed. The shipper arrived to pick up the order and supplier Z knew nothing about it.
- Goods have been shipped without insurance when company policy dictated that insurance was required.

These problems occur because of the unreliable nature of the Internet and the lack of visibility a company has into the workings and state of an outside organization. By using BTP in support of this supply application, these problems can be ameliorated.

BTP is a protocol, that is, a set of specific messages that get exchanged between computer systems supporting an application, with rules about the meaning and use of the messages. The

computer systems will also exchange other, application-specific messages. Thus, within the example, the Manufacturer's system and the Supplier's system (say), will exchange application messages detailing what the goods are, how many, what price and will also exchange BTP messages. The parts of the application in both systems that handle these different sets of messages can be distinguished, as in Figure 1. In each BTP-using party there is an **Application Element** and a **BTP Element**. The Application Elements exchange the order information and cause the associated business functions to be performed. The BTP Elements, which send and receive the BTP messages, perform specific roles in the protocol. These BTP Elements assist the application in getting the work of the application done. The Application Element, as understood by this model, may include supporting infrastructure elements, such as containers or interceptors, as well as application-specific code.

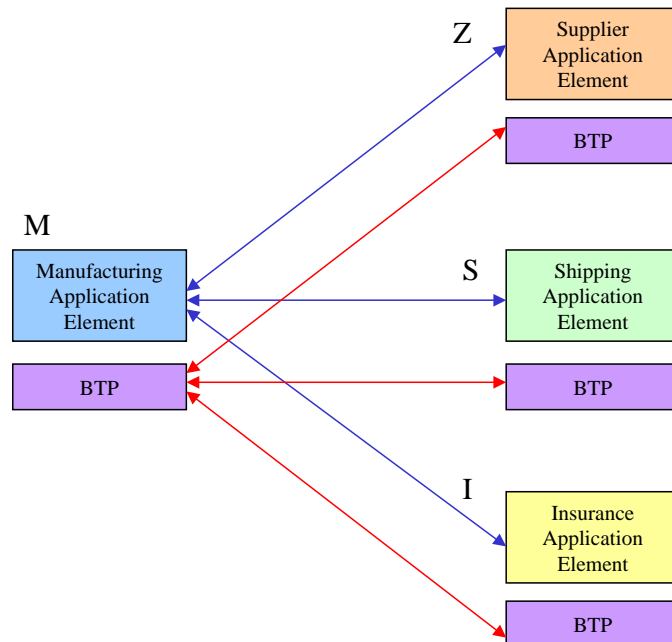


Figure 1 – Manufacturer Example

3.1.2 Business transactions

A **Business Transaction** can be defined as a consistent change in the state of a business relationship between two or more **parties**. A business relationship is any distributed state held by the parties which is subject to contractual constraints agreed by those parties. For example, a master purchasing agreement, which permits the placing of orders for components by known buying organizations, allows a buyer and a seller to exchange meaningful information about the creation and processing of an order. Such agreements may include the specification of shared or canonical data formats, of the messages that carry those formats and their permitted sequences, all of which are needed for an automated implementation of an agreement. This definition of a business relationship is deliberately silent on the nature of the "business" transacted between the parties: it might be trading for profit, verification of authorizations for expenditure or loans, consistent publication (replication) of government ordinances to multiple sites, or any other computerized interaction where the parties require high confidence of consistent delivery or processing of data.

In each party or site where business relationship state resides an **Application System** must exist which can maintain that state and communicate it as needed to other parties. The **Business Transaction Protocol** (BTP) assists the Application Systems of the various parties to bring about consistent and coordinated changes in the relationship as viewed from each party. BTP assumes that for a given Business Transaction, state changes occur, or are desired, in computer systems

controlled by some set of parties, and that these changes are related in some application-defined manner. BTP assumes that the parties involved in a Business Transaction have distinct and autonomous Application Systems, which do not require knowledge of each others' implementation or internal state representations. Access to such loosely coupled Application Systems is assumed to occur only through service interfaces.

The state changes that BTP is concerned with are only those affecting the immediate business relationship. Although these externally visible changes will typically correspond to internal state changes of the parties, use of BTP does not itself imply any constraints or requirements on the internal state.¹

3.1.3 External Effects

BTP coordinates the state changes caused by the exchange of **Application Messages**. These state changes are part of the **Contract** between BTP-using parties. In the manufacturing example, an interaction between the manufacturer and the supplier might involve the supplier receiving the order (an Application Message), checking to ensure that it had enough product on hand, reserving the product in the manufacturer's name and replying. When the manufacturer agrees to the purchase (assuming the shipping and insurance are also reserved), BTP messages are sent to confirm the purchase. In this case, the supplier is offering a **BTP-enabled service** – the Application Element and its supporting BTP Elements together offer this service.

In general, to be able to satisfy such contracts a BTP-enabled **service** must support in some manner provisional or tentative state changes (the transaction's **Provisional Effect**) and completion either through confirmation (**Final Effect**) or cancellation (**Counter-effect**). The meaning of provisional, final, and Counter-effect are specific to the application and to the implementation of the application. In the example, the reservation of the order is the Provisional Effect, the completion of the purchase is the Final Effect.

Some of the implementation approaches are shown in Table 1. From the perspective of BTP and the initiator application, all these are considered equivalent. Outside of BTP the underlying business relationship (or Contract) between the parties can constrain the degree to which the effects are visible.

Table 1 Some alternatives for Provisional, Final and Counter-Effects

Provisional Effect	Final Effect	Counter effect	Comment
Store intended changes without performing them	Perform the changes	Delete the stored changes, unperformed	Provisional Effect may include checking for validity
Perform the changes, making them visible; store information to undo the changes	Delete undo information	Perform undo action	One form of compensation approach
Store original state, prevent outside access, perform changes	Allow access	Restore original state; allow access	A typical database approach
Perform the changes, marked or typed as provisional, making them visible	Mark or transform as final	Delete or mark/transform as cancelled	E.g. quote-to-order cycle

¹ Although a Business Transaction is defined as concerning a business relationship, the facilities of BTP make it suitable for other environments where loosely coupled systems require coordination and consistency.

These alternatives are not the only ones – they can be combined or varied. The visible state of the application information prior to confirmation or cancellation may be different from both the original state and the final state.

Especially in the compensation approach, if the changes are cancelled, the Counter-effect may be a precise inversion or removal of provisional changes, or it may be the processing of operations that in some way compensate for, make good, alleviate or supplement their effect. There may be side-effects of various kinds from a Counter-effected operation – such as levying of cancellation charges or the record of the operation may be visible, but marked as cancelled. The possibility of these side-effects is considered to be part of the overarching Contract.

3.1.4 Two-phase outcome

The BTP protocol coordinates the transitions into and out of the event states described above by sending messages between the transaction parties. This involves a two-phase exchange. First the Application Elements exchange messages that determine the characteristics and cause the performance of the Provisional Effect; then a separate message, to the BTP Element, asking for the performance of the final or the counter effect.

In general, the Application Elements in the systems involved having first communicated the Application Messages, each system that has to make changes in its own state:

- determines whether it is able achieve its Provisional Effect and then ensure it will be able either to **Cancel** (Counter-effect) its operation or to **Confirm** (give Final Effect to) its operation, whichever is subsequently instructed, and
- reports its ability to Confirm-or-cancel (its preparedness) to a central coordinating entity.

And, after receiving these reports, the coordinating entity:

- determines which of the systems should be instructed to Confirm and which should be instructed to Cancel
- informs each system whether it should Confirm or Cancel (the “outcome”).by sending a message to its BTP Element

When there is more than one system that has to make changes, such a two-phase exchange mediated by a coordinator is required in order to achieve a consistent outcome for a set of operations. The two phases of the BTP protocol ensure that either the entire attempted transaction is abandoned or a consistent set of participants is confirmed.

3.1.5 Actors and roles

BTP centres on the bilateral relationship between the computer systems of the coordinating entity and those of one of the parties in the overall Business Transaction. For each bilateral relationship in a Business Transaction, a software agent within the coordinating entity’s systems plays the BTP Role of Superior and a software agent within the systems of the party play the BTP Role of Inferior. The concept “**Role**” refers strictly to the participation in a particular relationship in a particular Business Transaction. The software agent performing a Role is termed an **Actor**. An Actor is distinguished from other Actors by being distinguishably addressable. The same Actor may perform multiple roles in the same Business Transaction (including the case where a Superior is also an Inferior), and may also perform the same or different roles in multiple Business Transactions, either concurrently or consecutively.

3.1.6 Superior:Inferior relationship

A basic case of a single Superior:Inferior relationship, including the association with Application Elements, is illustrated in Figure 2. In many cases, including the manufacturer supply example, the Application Element associated with the superior will directly initiate the application exchanges – as does the manufacturer’s application client to the supplier’s server, for example – but this is not invariably the case. It is possible that the first direct communication between the

Application Elements is from one associated with an Inferior to the one associated with the Superior – for example, with an application that requested quotes by advertising the identity and location of the Superior along with invitation to quote; incoming quotes would be the first direct Application Message exchanged. But in all cases the topmost Application Element in a tree or subtree will be aware of the Business Transaction first. How the identity of the transaction and the address of the BTP Superior are communicated to the secondary Application Element is a matter for the **Application Protocol** and not strictly part of BTP, although it will commonly be done by associating a BTP CONTEXT message with Application Messages..

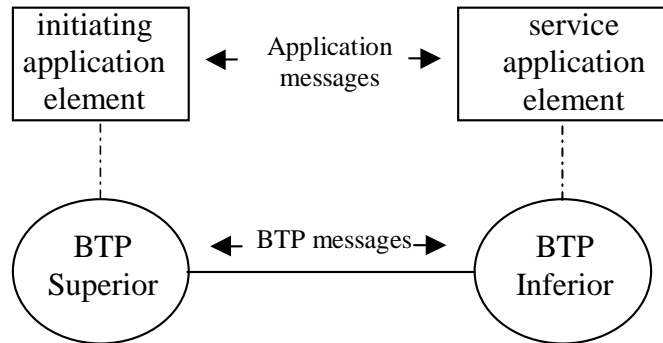


Figure 2 Basic Superior:Inferior relationship for BTP

An Inferior is associated with some set of application activities that create effects within the party, for a given Business Transaction. As stated above, commonly, though not invariably, this application activity within the party will be a result of some operation invocations from elsewhere (shown as the “initiating Application Element” in Figure 2), associated with the Superior to an Application Element associated with the Inferior (shown as “Service Application Element”). This second Application Element determines what activities the Inferior is responsible for, and then the Inferior is responsible for reporting to the Superior whether the associated operations’ Provisional Effect can be confirmed/cancelled – this is called “becoming prepared”, because the Inferior has to remain prepared to receive whichever order eventually arrives (subject to various exceptions and exclusions, detailed below).

3.1.7 Business Transaction Trees

There are many patterns in which the service provider participants involved in a Business Transaction may be arranged in respect of the two-phase exchange and the determination of which are eventually confirmed. The simplest is shown in Figure 3 involving only two parties – one (B) making itself subject to the decision of Confirm-or-Cancel made by the other (A). This basic bilateral relationship, in which one side makes itself inferior to the other, is the building block used in all Business Transaction patterns. In this simplest case, the “coordination” by the superior, A, is just that A can be sure whether the operations at the inferior, B were eventually cancelled or confirmed.

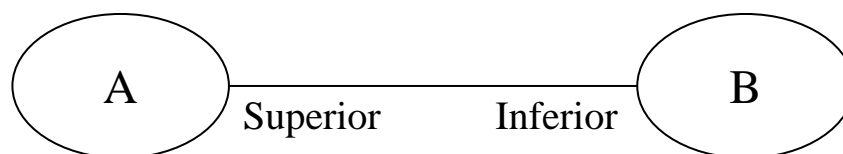


Figure 3 Simple two-party Business Transaction

In the next simplest case, as in Figure 4, a bilateral, Superior:Inferior relationship appears twice, with two Inferiors, D and E, both making themselves inferior to a single Superior, C. From the perspective of either D or E, they are in the same position as B in the previous case –they are unaware of and unaffected (directly) by each other. It is only within C that there is any linkage between the Confirm-or-Cancel outcomes that apply to D and E.

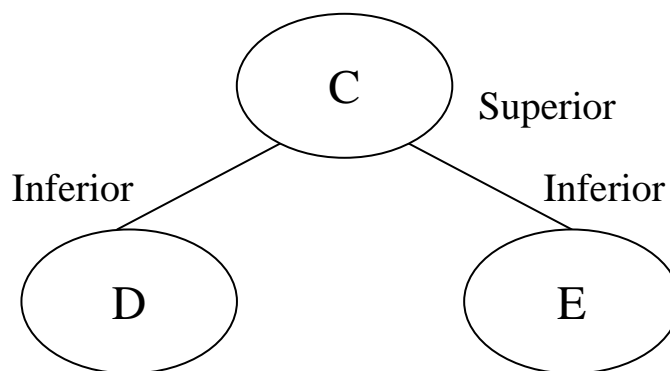


Figure 4 Business Transaction with two inferiors

The same Superior:Inferior relationship is used in Business Transaction Trees that are both “wider” – with more Inferiors reporting their preparedness to be Confirm-or-canceled to a single Superior – and “deeper”. In a “deeper” tree, as in Figure 5, an entity (G) that is Superior to one or more Inferiors (H, J), is itself Inferior to another entity (F) – it is said to be **interposed** or is an **Intermediate** (either term can be used). In this case, G will collect the information on preparedness of its Inferiors before passing on its own report to its Superior, F, and awaiting the outcome as advised by F.

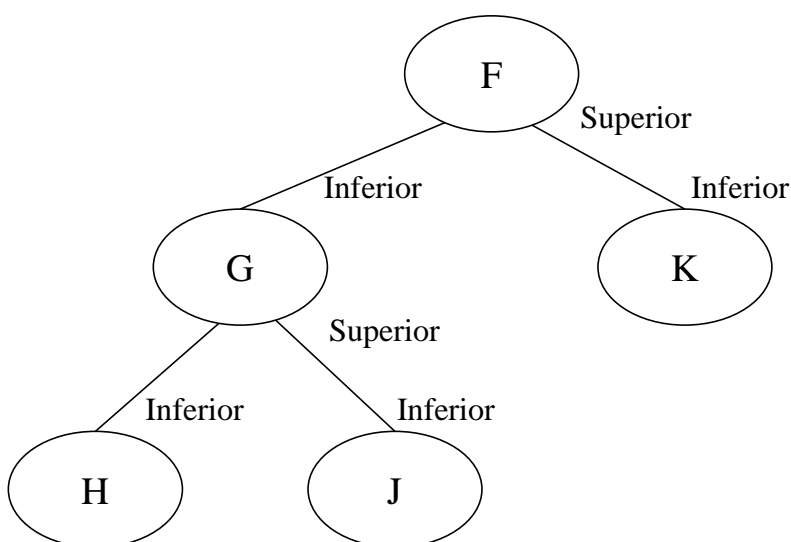


Figure 5 Business Transaction with an Intermediate (interposition)

A Business Transaction Tree, made up of these bilateral Superior:Inferior relationships can, in theory, be arbitrarily “wide” or “deep” – there are no fixed limits to how many Inferiors a single Superior can have, or how many levels of intermediates there are between the top-most Superior (that is Inferior to none) and the bottom-most leaf Inferior. The actual creation of the tree depends on the behaviour and requirements of the application. Given the (potentially) inter-organisational nature of Business Transactions, there may be no overall design or control of the structure of the tree.

Each Inferior has only one Superior. However, a single Superior may (and commonly does) have multiple relationships with Inferiors. Multiple inferiors does not necessarily imply multiple parties; one party may control several participants in that are Inferiors of the same Superior.

3.1.8 Atoms and Cohesions

As described in the previous section, the Superior receives reports from its Inferiors as to whether they are prepared. It gathers these reports in order to ascertain which Inferiors should be cancelled and which confirmed - those that cannot prepare will have already cancelled themselves. This determined, directly or indirectly, by the Application Element responsible of the creation and control of the Superior, which determines the nature of the Superior. There are two dimensions of variation in the Superior:

- Is it an Inferior to another Superior?
- Does it treat its own Inferiors atomically or cohesively?

The distinction between atomic and cohesive behaviour is whether the Superior will choose or allow some Inferiors to Cancel while others Confirm – this is not allowed for atomic behaviour, in which all must Confirm or all must Cancel, but is allowed for cohesive behaviour.

The possible cases for a Superior, given these two dimensions of variation, are:

- a) the Application Element initiated the Business Transaction (causing the creation of the Superior), and instructed that all Inferiors of the Superior should Confirm or all should Cancel; the Superior is an **Atom Coordinator**;
- b) the Application Element initiated the Business Transaction, but deferred the choice of which Inferiors should Confirm until later, allowing it (the Application Element) to choose some subset to be confirmed, others to Cancel; the Superior is a **Cohesion Composer**;
- c) the Application Element was itself involved in an existing Business Transaction, and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this Application Element instructed that all Inferiors of this Superior should Confirm, but only if confirmation is instructed from above or all should Cancel; the Superior is an (atomic) **Sub-coordinator**;
- d) the Application Element was itself involved in an existing Business Transaction, and the Superior in this relationship is the Inferior in another one; this Application Element deferred the choice of which Inferiors should be candidates to Confirm until later, allowing it (the Application Element) to choose some subset to be confirmed, given that confirmation is instructed from above, others to Cancel; the Superior is a (cohesive) **Sub-composer**.

In the atomic case, the two-phase outcome exchange means a Superior acting as an atomic Coordinator or sub-coordinator will treat any Inferior which cannot prepare to Cancel/Confirm as having veto power, causing the Superior to instruct all its Inferiors to Cancel. A Business Transaction whose topmost Superior is atomic is an **Atomic Business Transaction**, or **Atom** – the superior is the Atom Coordinator.

In the cohesion case, with the Superior acting as a cohesive Composer or Sub-Composer, the controlling Application Element will determine the implications of an Inferior's failure to be prepared to Confirm-or-Cancel; the Application Element may Cancel some or all other Inferiors, do other application work, which may involve new Inferiors or may just accept the cancellation of that one Inferior and carry on. A Business Transaction whose topmost Superior is cohesive is a **Cohesive Business Transaction**, or **Cohesion** – the Superior is the Cohesion Composer.

For a Cohesion, the set of Inferiors that eventually Confirm is called the **Confirm-set**. The term is also used to mean the set of Inferiors that have been chosen to (potentially) Confirm before the final outcome is decided – if the Cohesion is eventually cancelled, then Confirm-set cancels. (See section "Evolution of Confirm-set"). The Confirm-set of an Atom is all of the Inferiors.

If the Superior is itself an Inferior, its own action of becoming prepared, and reporting this to its own Superior will depend on the receipt of prepared reports from its Inferiors. If it is atomic (i.e. is a sub-coordinator), it will only **Become Prepared** if all Inferiors reported preparedness to it; if it is cohesive (i.e. is a sub-composer), the controlling Application Element will determine whether the set of Inferiors that have reported as prepared is sufficient.

If the Superior is not an Inferior, the determination of when, if and, for a Cohesion, what it should Confirm depends on the controlling application. This “top-most” Superior has a different relationship to the controlling application to that of an Inferior to its Superior: an Inferior reports that it is prepared to the Superior, which instructs it whether to Cancel or to Confirm; the top-most Superior is asked by the Application Element to attempt to Confirm, but, dependent on the preparedness of its Inferiors, the top-most Superior makes the final decision. Consequently the top-most Superior is termed the **Decider**; the Application Element that asks it to Confirm is the **Terminator**.

3.1.9 Participants, Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers

An Inferior may directly be responsible for applying the Confirm-or-Cancel decision to some application effects, or may in turn be a BTP Superior to which others will enrol. If it only handles application effects it is called a **Participant**, in the latter case it is called a **Sub-coordinator** or a **Sub-composer**, depending on whether it is atomic or cohesive with respect to its own future Inferiors. (If an Inferior is both responsible for application effects, and is a BTP Superior, it is not considered a Participant, according to the strict definitions, though informally it may be referred to as such.) The Superior is unaware, via the BTP exchanges, whether the Inferior is a Participant, Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer. This specification does not define messages or interfaces for the creation of Participants or for the Application Element to tell the Participant what the application effects are or how they are to be confirmed or cancelled as necessary. (Although out-of-scope for this specification, one or more APIs could be standardised.)

3.2 Business transaction lifecycle

3.2.1 Business Transaction creation

This section describes in some detail how a BTP Business Transaction is created. The interaction diagram in Figure 6 also shows this sequence. The messages shown in lower-case italics (between Factory and Coordinator) represent interactions that are not specified in BTP.

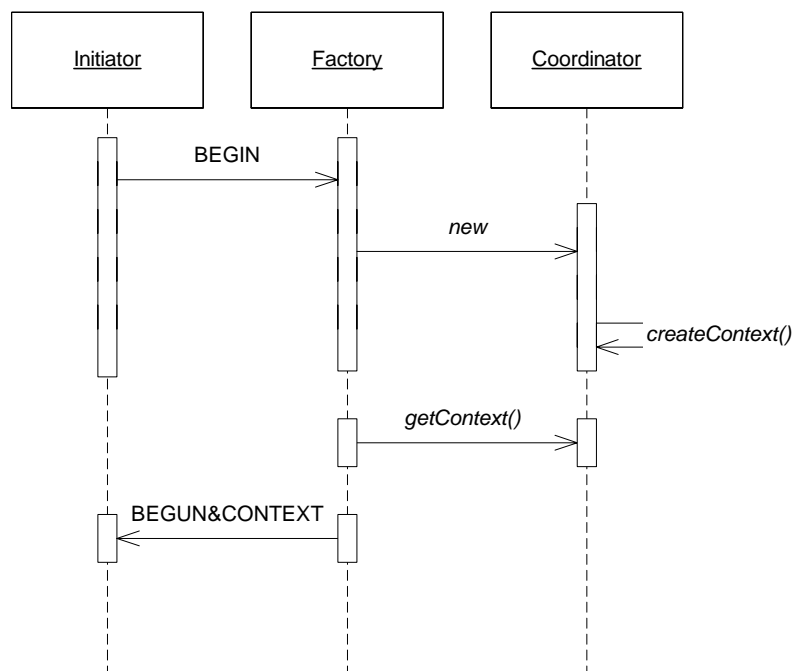


Figure 6 – Creation of a Business Transaction

A Business Transaction is started at the initiative of an Application Element, which causes the creation of a Coordinator or Composer. Any Inferiors participating in this transaction will enrol with this Superior. BTP defines abstract messages (BEGIN, BEGUN) to request this but the equivalent function can also be achieved using proprietary means, especially if the Factory or Coordinator is an internal component of the initiating application. If the BTP messages are used, the Application Element performs the Role of Initiator and sends BEGIN to a Factory. The BEGIN message identifies whether a Coordinator (for an Atom) or a Composer (for a Cohesion) is desired. The Factory, after the creation of the new Coordinator or Composer, replies with a BEGUN message, which contains a CONTEXT message. The Coordinator's or Composer's creation is the establishment of a new instance of a BTP Role. It may involve only the assignment of a new identifier within an existing Actor (which may also be performing the Factory Role, for example). Alternatively a new Actor with a distinct address may be instantiated. These and other alternatives are implementation choices, and BTP ensures other Actors are unaffected by the choice made.

The BEGUN message provides the addressing and identification information needed for a Terminator to access the new Coordinator or Composer as Decider; the Application Element performing the Initiator Role may itself act as Terminator, or may pass this information to some other Application Element.

Whether this interoperable BTP Initiator:Factory relationship or some other mechanism is used to initiate the Business Transaction, a CONTEXT is made available. This identifies the Coordinator or Composer as a Superior – containing both addressing information and the identification of the relevant state information. The CONTEXT is also marked as to whether or not this Superior will behave atomically with respect to its Inferiors (i.e. is it a Coordinator or Composer).

3.2.2 Business Transaction propagation

The propagation of the Business Transaction from one party to another, to establish the Superior:Inferior relationships, involves the transmission of the CONTEXT. This is commonly in association with, or related to, one or more Application Messages between the parties. In a typical case, an Application Message is sent from the Application Element that performed the Initiator Role (the “sending application” in Figure 2) to some other Application Element (the receiving application). The CONTEXT is sent with the Application Message in such a way that the Application Elements understand that work performed as a result of the Application Message is to be the subject of a Confirm-or-Cancel decision of the Superior.² The receiving Application Element causes the creation of an Inferior (which, as for the Superior may involve just assignment on a new identifier, or instantiation of an new Actor) and ensures the new Inferior is enrolled with the Superior identified in the received CONTEXT, using an ENROL message sent to the Superior using the address in that CONTEXT.

Figure 7 shows a sequence diagram of the propagation of a Business Transaction. It is assumed the transaction has already been created, and thus the Application Element and Coordinator exist. The diagram shows the Enroller as a distinct Role, with non-standardised interactions between the Application Element, the Enroller and the new Inferior. The Enroller Role may in fact be performed by the Application Element, by the Inferior or by some other entity. At least the Superior-identifier and Superior-address from the CONTEXT has to be passed the Enroller and to the Inferior so they can communicate with the Coordinator (whose identifier and address these are).

² The relationship between the application activity and BTP is subtle, and summarised in this sentence.

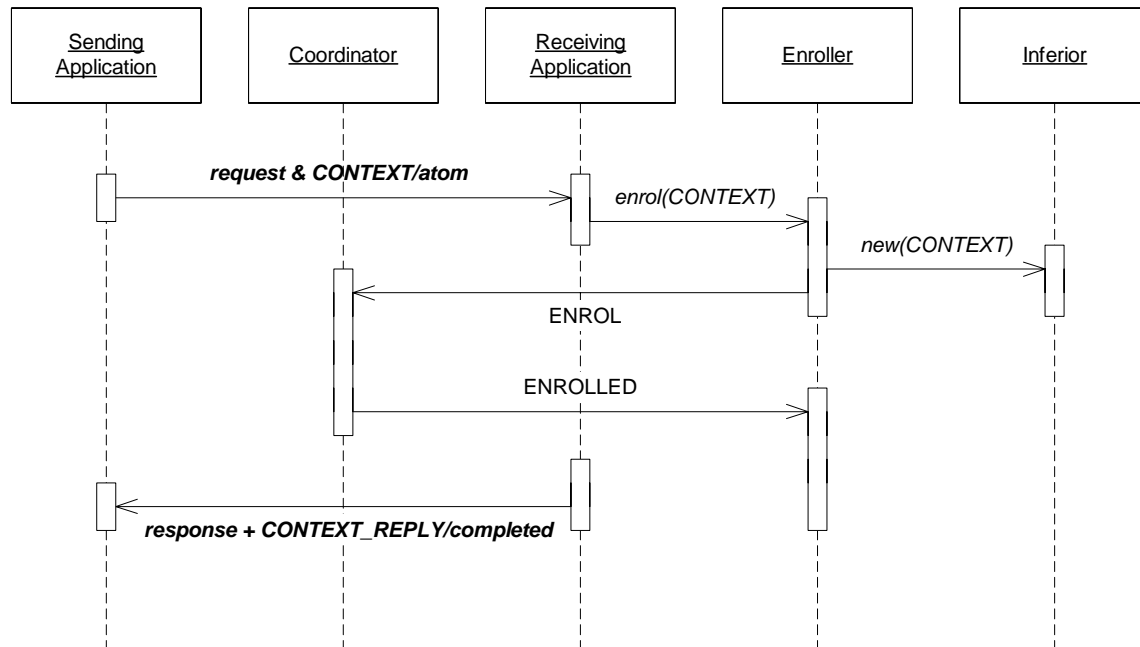


Figure 7 Sequence diagram of propagation

3.2.3 Creation of Intermediates (Sub-Coordinators and Sub-Composers)

If the new Inferior is to be a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, this can be created using a non-standard mechanism or the Initiator:Factory relationship can be used again. Figure 8 shows a sequence diagram, using the latter mechanism. The Application Element, having received an Application Message and a CONTEXT from some Superior – shown as “Coordinator/a” in the diagram - wants to create the new Inferior. Acting in the Initiator Role, the Application Element issues BEGIN to the Factory, with the CONTEXT for the original Superior (Coordinator/a) as a field of the BEGIN. The Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer as an Inferior of the Superior identified by the received CONTEXT. The reply from the Factory is a BEGUN containing a CONTEXT – this being the CONTEXT for the new Sub-coordinator (‘b’) or Sub-composer as a Superior. The Sub-coordinator/Sub-composer is not a Decider, as its decision is subordinated to the outcome received from the Superior. For a Sub-coordinator, further control by the application is primarily a matter of relating the new CONTEXT to appropriate application activity. For a Sub-composer, there is also a requirement for the application to determine which of the Inferiors of the Sub-composer must have reported they are prepared before the Sub-composer can report that it is itself prepared to its own Superior, and then which of these Inferiors are to be ordered to Confirm if the Sub-composer is ordered to Confirm. This specification does not provide an interface or interoperable message to control this; like the relationship between Application Element and Participant, it is left to the implementation or independent standardisation.

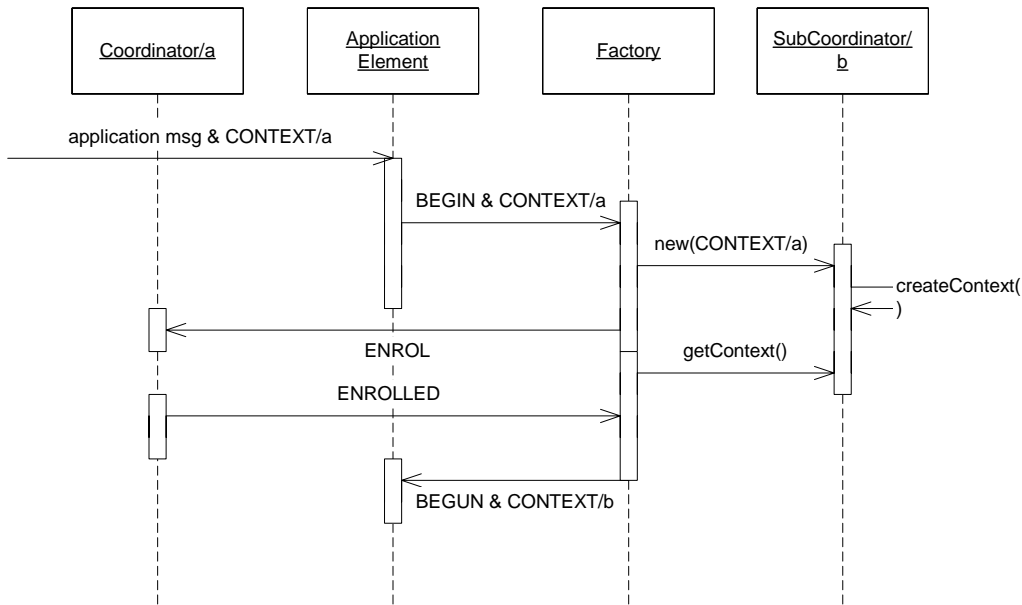


Figure 8 – Creation of a Sub-coordinator

The creation of a new Inferior and establishment of a Superior:Inferior relationship does not always imply that the BTP Actors are under the control of different business parties or Application Elements. In particular, an Application Element may begin a Cohesion, then create and enrol (atomic) Sub-coordinators as Inferiors of the Composer, then associate a different Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT with each of several aspects of the application work, transmitting that CONTEXT with the Application Messages for that aspect to the other parties in the Business Transaction. Those parties can then create Participants (or other Inferiors) that are enrolled with the appropriate Sub-coordinator. Later, the Application Element (as Terminator, or its equivalent) can choose which of the Cohesion Composers' Inferiors to Cancel and which to Confirm. By interposing its own atomic Sub-coordinator the initiating Application Element can indicate to the other parties that some associated set of application work will be confirmed or cancelled as a unit. This may allow the receiving parties to share information between **Application Operations** and to make one Participant responsible for applying the outcome to several operations.

3.2.4 “Checking” and context-reply

In BTP, enrolment is at the initiative of an Application Element that has received or has access to the CONTEXT which creates an Inferior (BTP uses a “pull” paradigm for enrolment). An Application Element in possession of a CONTEXT can choose, perhaps constrained by an overarching business and application understanding, whether and how many Inferiors to create and enrol. Consequently, in general, an Application Element which propagates a CONTEXT to another (via whatever mechanisms it choose), cannot be sure how many Inferiors will be enrolled as a result. Without further controls, there would be a possibility that an Application Element receiving a CONTEXT might attempt to enrol an Inferior with a Superior after the Superior had been asked to Confirm and had received PREPARED from all the Inferiors it knew about, or even had completed confirmation. In such a case application work that should have been part of a confirmed Atomic Business Transaction could be cancelled, violating the atomicity in a manner that will not be apparent to the application.

To avoid this, whenever a CONTEXT is transmitted to another party by or on behalf of the application, the transmission of the CONTEXT itself can be replied to with a CONTEXT_REPLY message – this is required for an Atom, allowed for a Cohesion. An Application Element that has

received a BTP CONTEXT is able, because it knows the Superior's identification and address in the CONTEXT, to enrol Inferiors (Figure 9).³ Replying with CONTEXT_REPLY means that the sender (the earlier receiver of a CONTEXT) will not enrol any more Inferiors (unless it follows the "late enrolment discipline", see below). Consequently the sender of a CONTEXT can keep track of whether there are any outstanding (un-replied to) CONTEXTs that could be used for an enrolment and can avoid requesting or permitting confirmation until everything is safe. This check is required for an Atom, but is not always essential when the CONTEXT is for a Cohesion. For a Cohesion, it is a matter for the controlling application whether all would-be Inferiors must be enrolled before a confirmation decision can be made; or whether it is acceptable to proceed to confirmation at some point in time with the already enrolled Inferiors (or a subset thereof), accepting the automatic cancellation of any late arrivals.

CONTEXT_REPLY can also indicate that attempted enrollments failed. This can occur if the Enroller is unable to contact the Superior, but it able to return a CONTEXT_REPLY to where-ever the CONTEXT came from.

Despite the above considerations, it is safe for an Application Element to enrol Inferiors after it has sent a CONTEXT_REPLY and even after the Superior has begun the termination sequence, provided it follows the "late enrolment discipline". This requires that the Application Element ensures that there is an already enrolled Inferior of the same Superior, and that this existing Inferior does not go prepared or resign until it is known that the new Inferior is correctly enrolled. The Superior (at least if atomic) will be unable to make a confirm decision until it has received PREPARED or RESIGN from that first Inferior and there is thus no risk of the new Inferior breaking the atomicity guarantee. Again, for a Cohesion, it is a matter for the controlling application to determine when a confirm decision is appropriate.

3.2.5 Message sequence

BTP messages are used in relationships between several pairs of roles. These particular pairwise relationships can be categorised into:

- **Outcome Relationships** : the Superior:Inferior relationship (i.e. between BTP Actors within the Transaction Tree) and the Enroller:Superior relationship used in establishing it
- **Control Relationships** : the application:BTP Actor relationships that create the nodes of the Transaction Tree (Initiator:Factory) and drive the completion (Terminator:Decider).

The Outcome Relationships and the messages used in them are essential parts of BTP. For the Control Relationships, it would be possible to achieve the same general function using non-standardised messages or API mechanisms. There are other distinguishable relationships between roles defined by BTP that are not standardised in this specification.

Figure 9 shows the message exchange for the conventional progression of a simple transaction to confirmation with a single Superior:Inferior relationship, assuming the standard Control Relationship. Two Application Elements using a request/response Application Message exchange are involved – the first is represented as the Initiator and Terminator, the second as the Service and Enroller. The Decider/Superior is shown as a Coordinator, but with only one Inferior there would be no difference with a Cohesion Composer. The Factory:Coordinator events are non-standardised, but represent interactions that must occur in some form. There are other interactions between the various application groups – Initiator-Terminator and Participant-Enroller-Service that are not shown – in particular the Service:Participant relationship.

The message sequence is shown is the "conventional" sequence, with all messages explicitly present and sent separately. There are several variations and optimisations possible – these are discussed below.

³ The "application element" from the perspective of BTP may include infrastructure software such as containers or interceptors, as well the application-specific code itself.

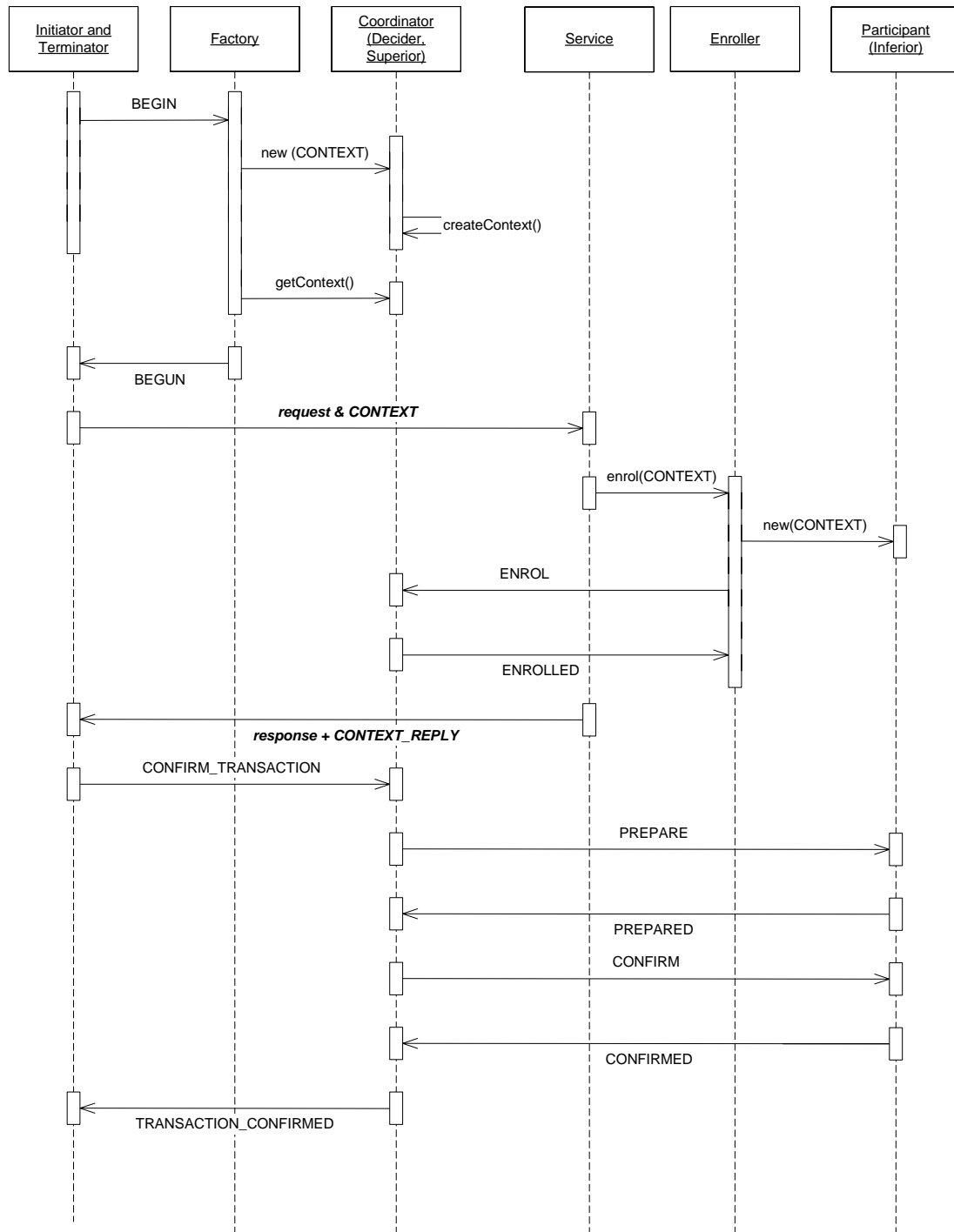


Figure 9 A conventional message sequence for a simple transaction

Note the CONTEXT, passed to the Initiator as a field of the BEGUN has “related” (&) relationship to the application request, although the exact meaning of this is defined by the application, not by BTP. The response + CONTEXT_REPLY need have no semantic significance, and could be sent separately, provided the CONTEXT_REPLY is not sent until the ENROLLED has returned. (CONTEXT-REPLY does have a “related” relationship to an application message when used to pass the identifier for the new Inferior, though again the exact meaning will be defined by the application.)

1053 The progression of a single instance of the central outcome (Superior:Inferior) relationship can
1054 also be presented as a set of state transitions. The normative part of the specification includes
1055 state tables for the Superior side of such a relationship and for the Inferior. Since a single
1056 Superior (Coordinator, Composer, Sub-coordinator, Sub-composer) can have multiple Inferiors,
1057 each Superior will have multiple instances of the "Superior state". How these link together is
1058 discussed below in the section "3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set", but the state transitions for the
1059 individual Superior:Inferior relationships include "decision events" which constrain the behaviour
1060 of the **Business Transaction Tree Node** as a whole, and thus define the semantics of the BTP
1061 messages.

1062 The normative state tables distinguish some states that differ only in which messages can be
1063 received and thus allow for a level of error checking. The progress of the Outcome Relationship
1064 can be followed without dropping to such a detailed level, and the state diagrams shown here
1065 aggregate some of the states that are distinguished in the state tables. The single letters in
1066 parentheses in the diagrams correspond to the state names used in the tables. For simplicity, the
1067 state diagrams do not include the events leading to the sending of a HAZARD message – the
1068 detection and recording of a "problem" – meaning that the Inferior is unable to cleanly Confirm or
1069 cleanly Cancel the operations it is responsible for. As is specified in the state tables, such a
1070 problem can be detected in most states, and reported with a HAZARD message.

1071 It should be noted that, with some exceptions, the transmission of a message **from** a Superior or
1072 Inferior does not cause a state change at that side. State changes are normally caused either by
1073 the receipt of a message from the **Peer**, or by a "decision event" – which may be an internal
1074 change, including a change in the persistent information for the transactions, or may be the
1075 receipt of a message on another relationship (e.g. as when a Sub-coordinator receives CANCEL
1076 from its Superior, which is a decision event as perceived on the relationships to its Inferiors). It
1077 would be normal for an implementation on entering a new state to send the message it can now
1078 send (there will be only one). It may repeat this message at any interval – in practice only if there
1079 is reason to believe (due to lower-layer errors, timeout or known recovery events) that messages
1080 may have got lost.

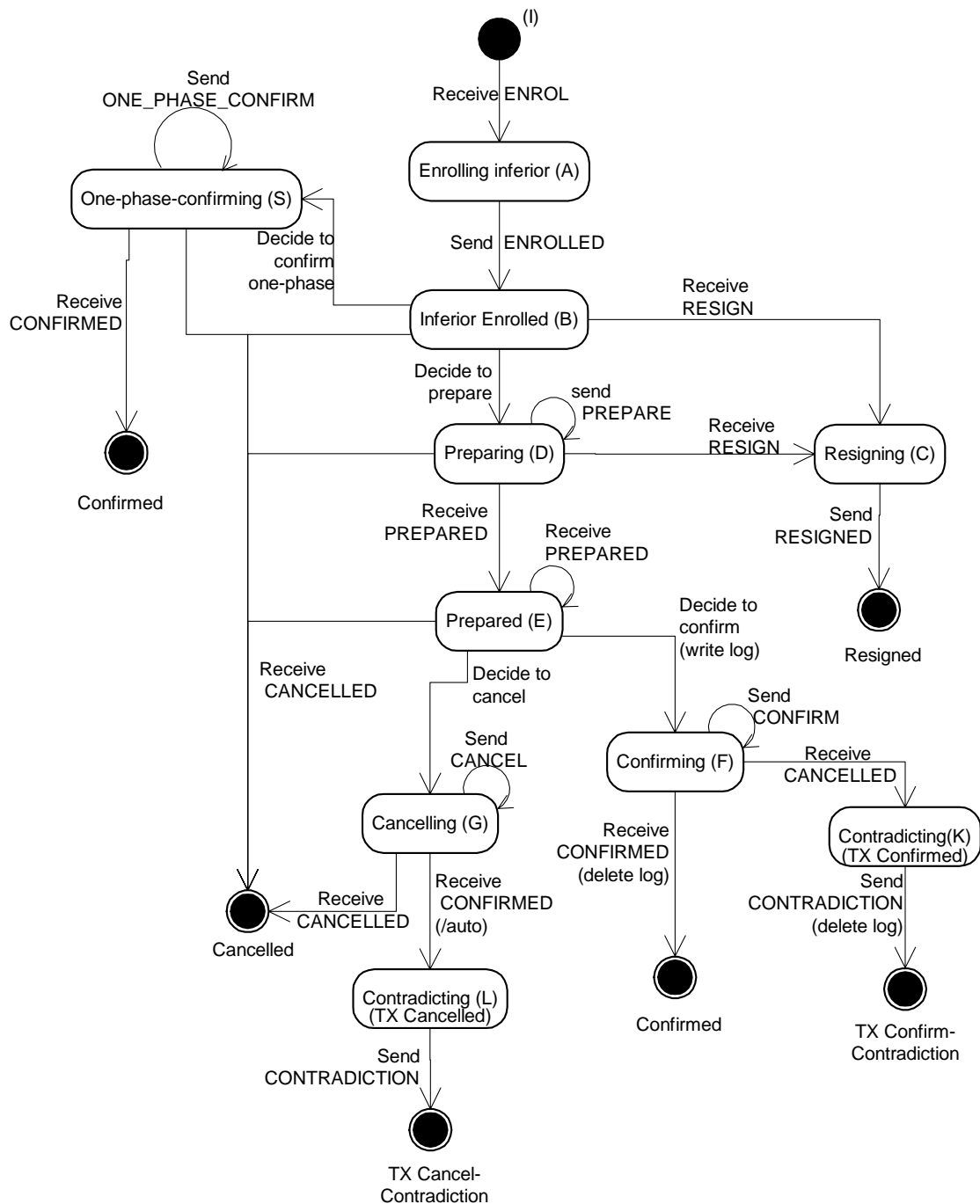


Figure 10 State diagram for Superior side of a Superior:Inferior relationship

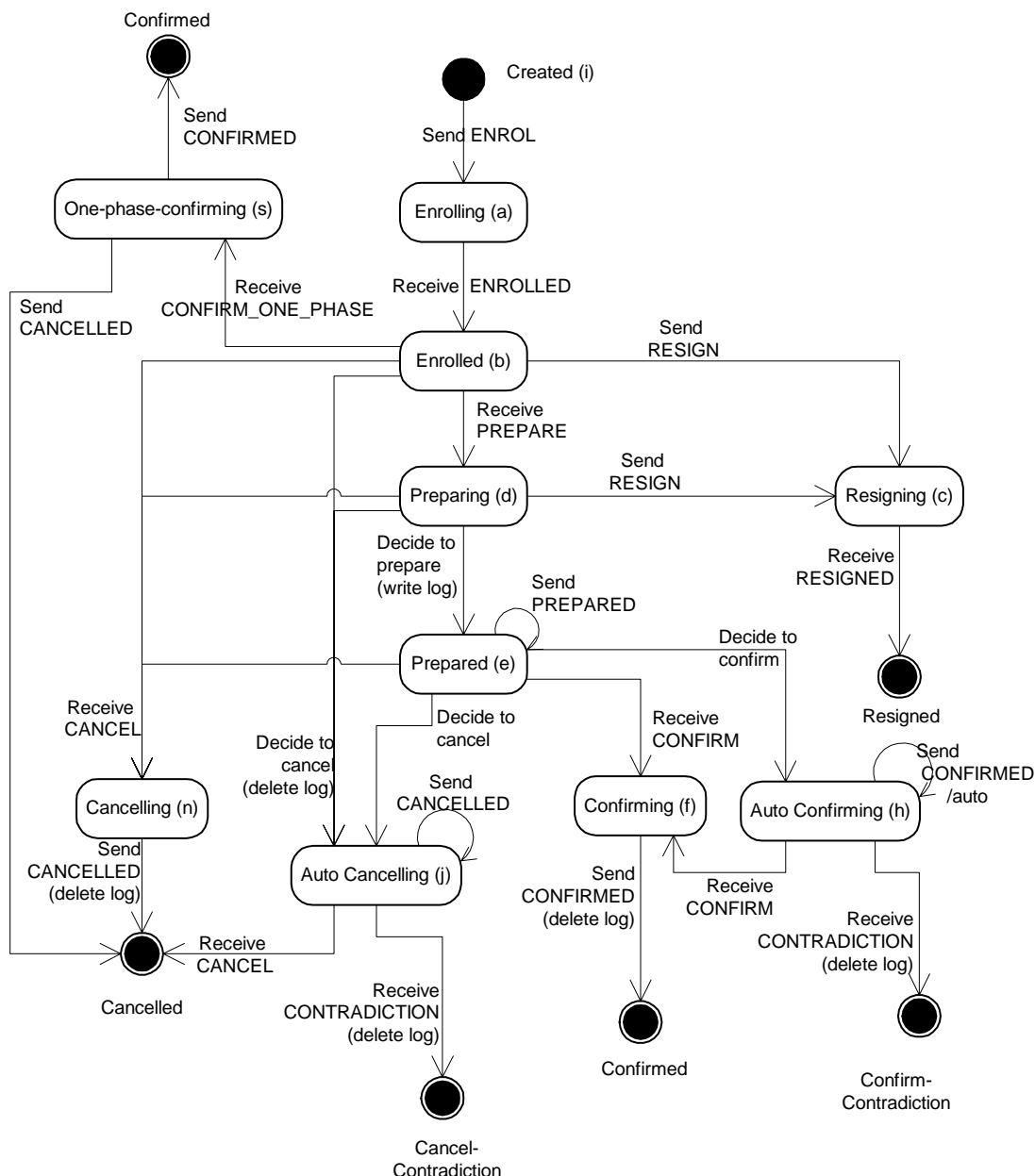


Figure 11 State diagram for Inferior side of Superior:Inferior relationship

3.2.6 Control of inferiors

In the case as shown in Figure 12, where the CONTEXT has been propagated from one Application Element (A) to others (B, C, and from C to D,E), the determination of whether to create and enrol Inferiors is, in general, up to the receiving Application Element – this is an aspect of the fundamental autonomy of the parties involved in a Business Transaction. This autonomy may be constrained in particular situations, by inter-party agreement or where the Application Elements are in fact under common control.

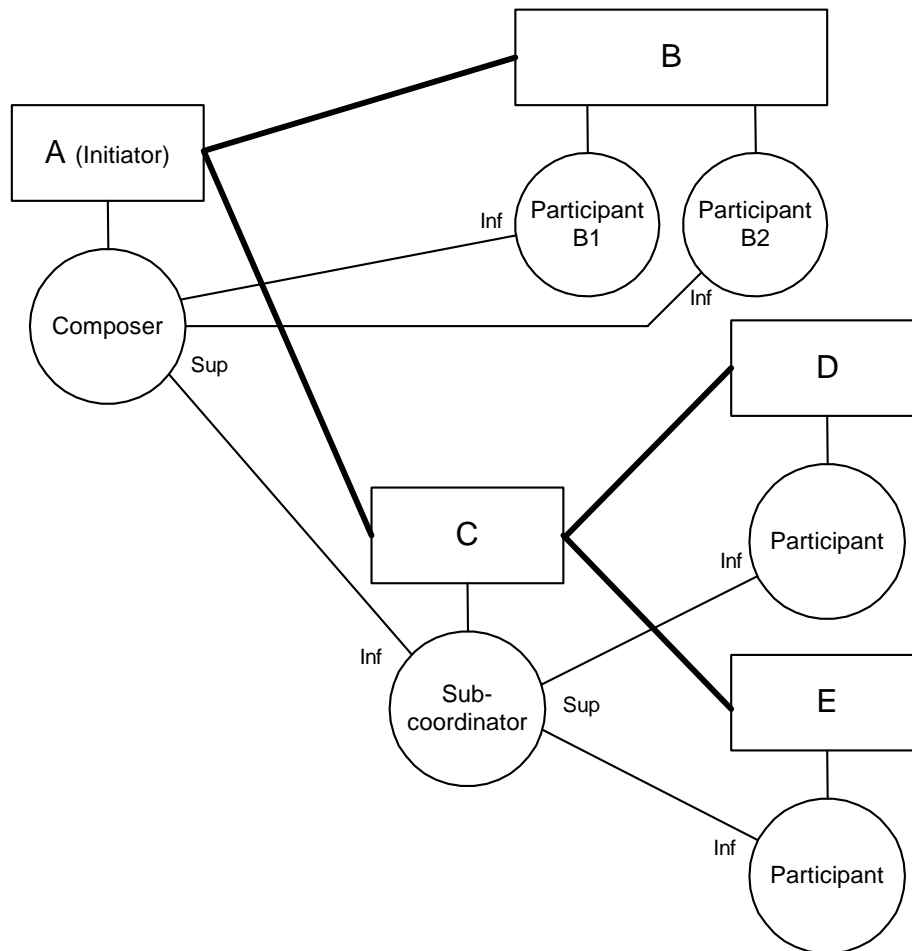


Figure 12 Transaction Tree showing various application:Participant relationships

The relationship between the Application Messages and either the propagated CONTEXT or the ENROL message(s) sent to the Superior is strictly part of the Application Protocol (or the application-with-BTP combination protocol). However defined, this allows the Superior-side Application Element to be aware of what application work will be confirmed or cancelled under the control of an Inferior. However, from the perspective of the Superior, and the Application Element controlling it, the Inferior is opaque – it is not in general possible for the Superior or its controlling Application Element to determine whether an Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator (i.e. has Inferiors of its own) or is a Participant, with no further BTP relationships. Thus, if the Inferior is a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator, the Superior has no visibility or control of its “grand-children” – the Inferiors of its Inferior (thus, in Figure 12, the Composer at A is unaware of D and E)

The opacity of an Inferior does not however apply to the control exercised by the immediately controlling Application Element. An Application Element, acting as Terminator to a Decider (i.e. to a Composer or Coordinator), can be aware of and distinguish the different Inferiors enrolled with that Decider (i.e. Inferiors enrolled with the Decider in its Role as Superior). (E.g. in Figure 12, Application Element A knows of the Inferiors at C, B1 and B2) This is especially the case for a Cohesion Composer, where the Terminator will be able to control which of the enrolled Inferiors of the Composer are eventually confirmed – more exactly, the application will have control of the Confirm-set for the Cohesion. For an Atom Coordinator, visibility of the Inferiors is useful but less important, since no selection can be made among which will be in the Confirm-set – for an Atom, all Inferiors are ipso facto members of the Confirm-set.

For this control of the Inferiors to be useful, the Terminator Application Element will need to be able to associate particular parts of the application work with each Inferior. In a traditional transaction system, users do not need to see participants, but they see services or objects. What participants are enlisted with a transaction on behalf of those services and objects is not really of interest to the user. When it comes to commit or rollback the transaction, it acts on the transaction and not on the individual participants.

In BTP that is still the case if we work purely with atoms. While an Atomic Coordinator knows its participants it cannot pick and choose among them. In contrast, a Cohesive Terminator must have significant, detailed knowledge and visibility of both the identities of its inferiors and association of parts of the application work with each Inferior. The user must be able to identify which participants to cancel/prepare/confirm. This identification can be achieved by various means. Taking the case of an Application Element controlling a Cohesion Composer:

- a) The Application Element can create an Atom Sub-coordinator as an immediate Inferior of the Cohesion Composer and propagate the Sub-coordinator's CONTEXT associated with Application Messages concerned with the particular part of the application work; any Inferiors (however many there may be) enrolled with Sub-coordinator can be assumed to be responsible for (some of) that part of the application, and the Terminator Application Element can just deal with the immediate Inferior of the Composer that it created.
- b) The Application Element can propagate the Composer's own CONTEXT, and the receiving Application Element can create its own Inferior (or Inferiors) which will be responsible for some part of the application, and send ENROL(s) to the Composer (as Superior). Application Messages concerned with that part of the application are associated, directly or indirectly, with each ENROL, and the Terminator Application Element can thus determine what each Inferior is responsible for.

In both cases, the means by which the Application Message and the BTP CONTEXT or ENROL are associated are ultimately application-specific, and there are several ways this can be done.

- At the abstract message level, BTP defines the concept of transmitting "related" BTP and Application Messages – particular bindings to Carrier Protocols can specify interoperable ways to represent this relatedness (e.g. the BTP message can be in a "header" field of the Carrier Protocol, the Application Message in the body).
- An Application Message may contain fields that identify or point to the BTP message (e.g. the "inferior-identifier" from the ENROL may be a field of the Application Message).
- BTP messages, including CONTEXT and ENROL, can carry "qualifiers" – extension fields that are not core parts of BTP or are not defined by BTP at all. The standard qualifier "inferior-name" or application-specific qualifiers can be used to associate application information and the BTP message. The qualifiers received from the Inferiors on ENROL are visible to the Terminator application on the INFERIOR_STATUSES message. The application design will need to ensure that the Terminator can determine which parts of the application work are associated with each Inferior.

NOTE -- For example, a service receiving an invocation associated with a Cohesion CONTEXT, but where the application design meant that there would be no more than one Inferior enrolled as a result of that invocation, could be required to include information identifying the service and the invocation in the "inferior-name" qualifier on the consequent ENROL. These qualifiers would be visible to the Terminator on INFERIOR_STATUSES, allowing the Terminator to determine which "inferior-identifiers" to include in the "inferiors-list" parameter of the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION which defines which Inferiors are to be confirmed. Among other alternatives, the "inferior-identifier" itself could be a field of the application response – this would also be applicable where there could be multiple Inferiors enrolled as a consequence of one invocation for the Terminator to choose between.

1166 These considerations about control of the Inferiors of a Decider also apply to the control of the
1167 Inferiors of a Sub-composer (and, again of less importance, a Sub-coordinator).

1168 **3.2.7 Evolution of Confirm-set**

1169 As mentioned above, the set of Inferiors of a Cohesion that will eventually Confirm is called the
1170 Confirm-set. The determination of the Confirm-set is made by the controlling application, but is
1171 affected by events from the Inferiors themselves. If the standard Control Relationship is used, the
1172 control of the Cohesion Composer is expressed by the Terminator:Decider exchanges, and the
1173 progressive determination of the Confirm-set (its evolution) is effectively the event sequence for
1174 the Terminator:Decider relationship.

1175 An Atom also has a Confirm-set, but this always includes all the Inferiors and so does not evolve
1176 in the same way as Cohesion's. With some exceptions, the Terminator:Decider relationship is the
1177 same for Atom Coordinators as for Cohesion Composers; this section deals with both, noting the
1178 exceptions.

1179 The event sequence for a Composer or Coordinator is summarised in the state diagram in Figure
1180 13. The step-by-step description refers to "Composer", but should be read as referring to
1181 Coordinators as well, unless stated otherwise.

1182 Initially, the Composer is created (by the Factory, using BEGIN with no related CONTEXT), and
1183 has no Inferiors. The Composer is now in the active state.

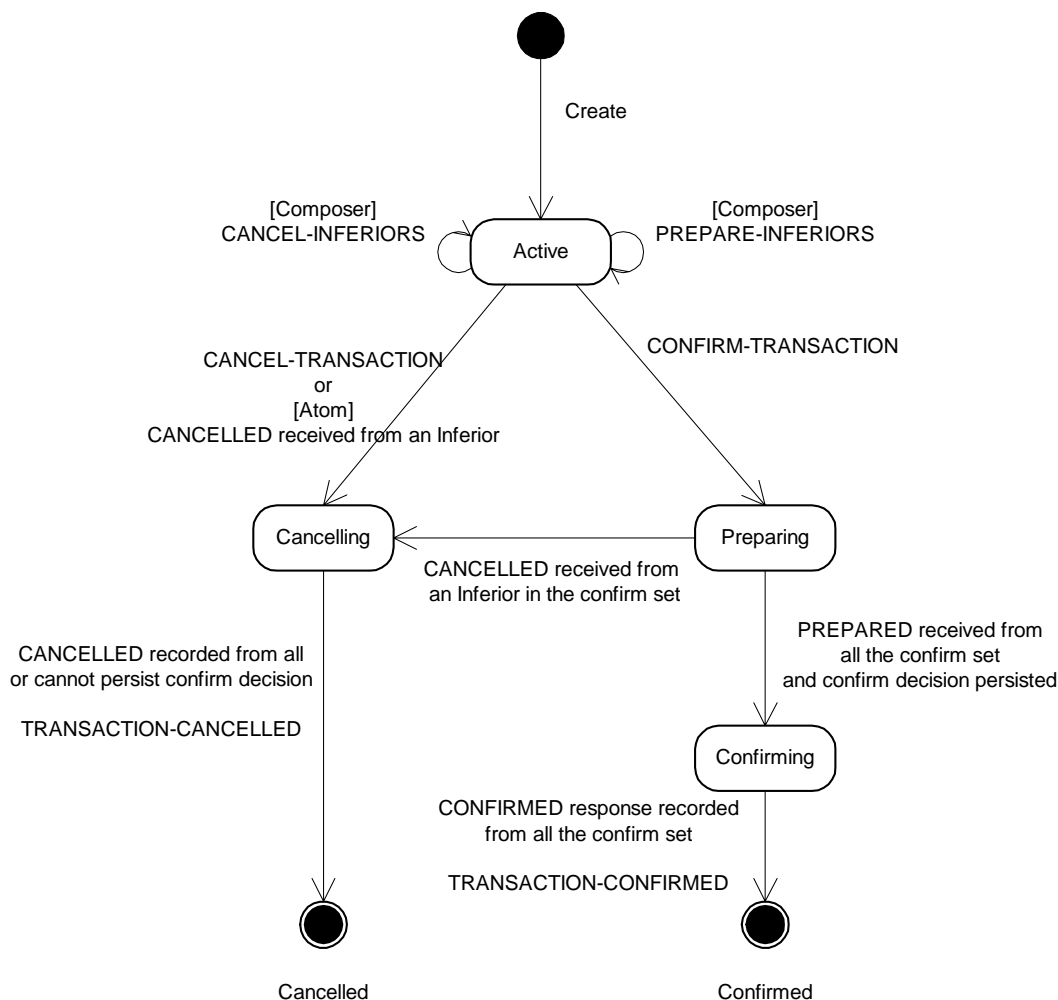


Figure 13 State diagram for a Composer or Coordinator (i.e. Decider)

While in the active state, the following may occur, in any order and with any repetition or overlapping:

- Inferiors are enrolled – ENROL is received by the Composer – adding to the set of Inferiors of the Composer.
- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior (see section 3.3.3 Resignation below). The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors, as if it had never been enrolled (a RESIGNED message may be sent to the Inferior, but it no longer “counts” in any of the Composer-wide considerations here).
- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior; there is no required immediate effect, but if this is a Coordinator the Atom will certainly Cancel eventually (and an implementation may choose to initiate cancellation immediately).
- PREPARED may be received; there is no immediate effect
- The Terminator may issue PREPARE_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some subset of the Inferiors; PREPARE is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset, excluding any from RESIGN, CANCELLED or PREPARED has been received; the sending of PREPARE will induce the Inferiors to reply with PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN; when replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the Terminator with INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the replies received (which may in fact have been received

1204 before the PREPARE_INFERIORS). PREPARE_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom
 1205 Coordinators.

- 1206 • The Terminator may issue CANCEL_INFERIORS to the Composer (as Decider) for some
 1207 subset of the Inferiors; CANCEL is sent to each and any of the Inferiors in the subset,
 1208 excluding any from RESIGN or CANCELLED has been received; the sending of CANCEL will
 1209 normally induce the Inferiors to reply with CANCELLED – there are some exception cases;
 1210 when replies have been received from all, the Composer (as Decider) replies to the
 1211 Terminator with INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the replies received.
 1212 CANCEL_INFERIORS is not issued to Atom Coordinators. CANCEL_INFERIORS may be
 1213 issued for an Inferior regardless of whether PREPARED has been received from it.
- 1214 • The Terminator may issue REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to the Composer (as Decider)
 1215 for all or some subset of the Inferiors; the Composer immediately replies with
 1216 INFERIOR_STATUSES, reporting the current state of the Inferiors as known to the Superior.

1217 Eventually, the Terminator issues one of the completion messages – CANCEL_TRANSACTION
 1218 or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. These messages have a flag that determines whether the
 1219 Terminator wishes to be informed of contradictory and heuristic decisions or hazards within the
 1220 transaction – this affects when the reply from the Composer (as Decider) is sent to the
 1221 Terminator. (See section “3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions” for
 1222 details on contradictory and heuristic cases).

1223 If the message is CANCEL_TRANSACTION, CANCEL is sent to all Inferiors that it has not
 1224 already been sent to, and from which neither RESIGN or CANCELLED have been received. If the
 1225 Terminator indicates it does not want to be informed of contradictions, the Composer will
 1226 immediately reply with TRANSACTION_CANCELLED. Otherwise, if and when CANCELLED or
 1227 RESIGN has been received from all Inferiors, the Composer replies to the Terminator with
 1228 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED; but if HAZARD or CONFIRMED is received from any Inferior, the
 1229 reply is INFERIOR_STATUSES, identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

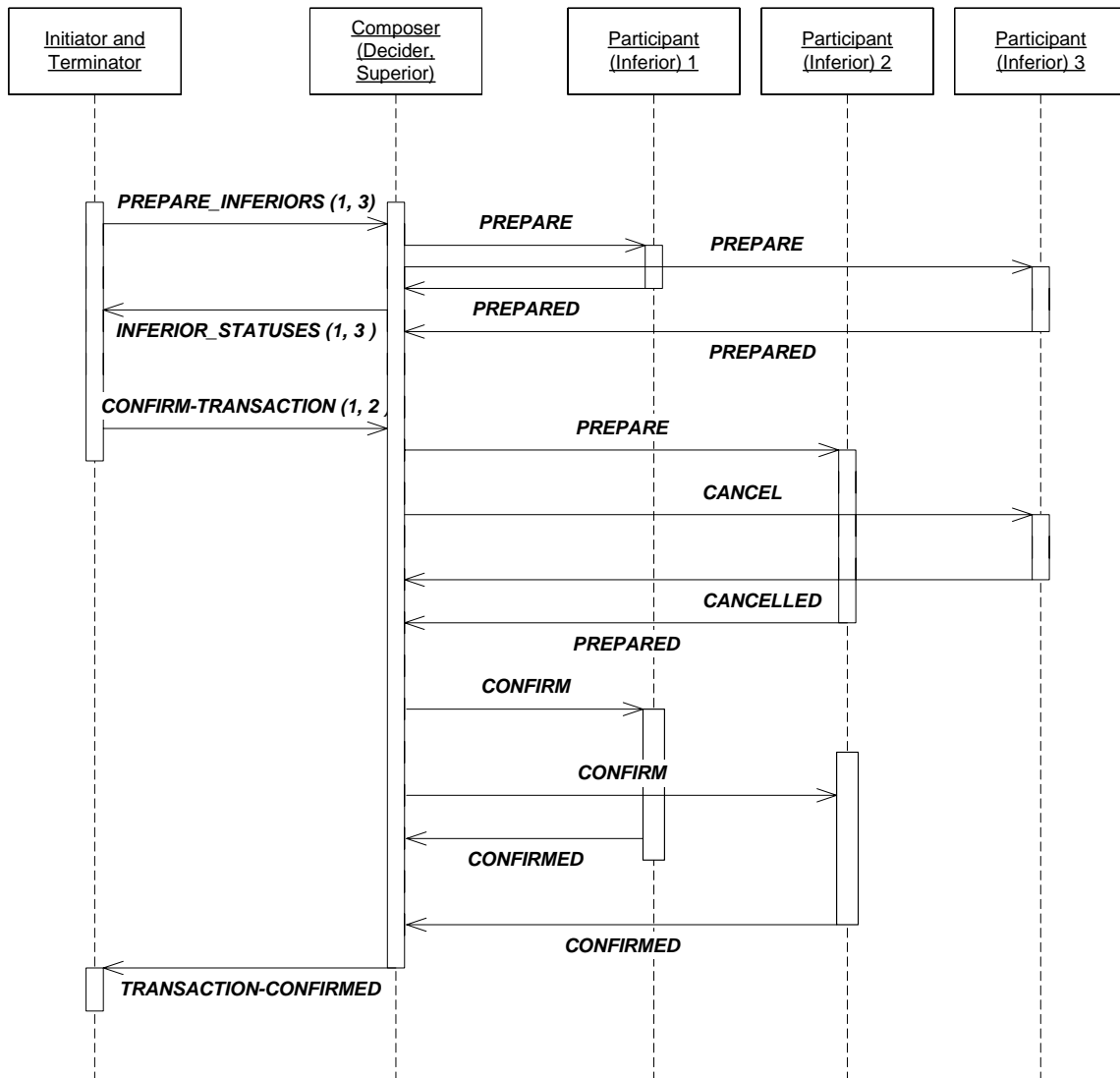
1230 If the completion message is CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, the inferiors-list parameter of the
 1231 message defines the Confirm-set. If the parameter is absent (which it must be for an Atom
 1232 Coordinator), then all Inferiors (excluding only those that have resigned) are the Confirm-set;
 1233 otherwise the Confirm-set is only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (less any
 1234 from which RESIGN has been received). The processing to arrive at the Confirm decision is:

- 1235 • If at the point of receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or at any point before making the
 1236 Confirm decision (see below), CANCELLED is received, then the transaction is cancelled and
 1237 processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received.
- 1238 • If there any Inferiors **not** in the Confirm-set from which neither CANCELLED or RESIGN has
 1239 been received, CANCEL is sent to them (this cannot happen for Atom Coordinators)
- 1240 • If initially or later, there is exactly one Inferior in the Confirm-set, and either PREPARE has
 1241 not been sent to it, or PREPARED has been received from it, then at implementation or
 1242 configuration option, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be sent to that Inferior. This delegates the
 1243 Confirm decision to the Inferior
- 1244 • If at any point, RESIGN is received from an Inferior, it is immediately removed from the
 1245 Confirm-set (this may trigger the decision making)
- 1246 • If there are any Inferiors in the Confirm-set from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED
 1247 has been received and to which PREPARE has not yet been sent, PREPARE is sent to that
 1248 Inferior
- 1249 • If initially or later, PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the Confirm-set, the
 1250 Composer *makes the Confirm decision*; it persists (or attempts to persist) information
 1251 identifying the Inferiors in the Confirm-set; if this fails, the transaction is cancelled and
 1252 processing continues as if CANCEL_TRANSACTION had been received; if the information is
 1253 persisted, the Confirm decision has been made.

1254 When the Confirm decision is made, CONFIRM is sent to all the Inferiors in the Confirm-set. And,
1255 if on the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION the Terminator indicated it did not wish to be informed of
1256 contradictions, TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent to the Terminator.

1257 If the Terminator indicated it wanted to be informed of contradictions, the Composer replies to it
1258 with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED if and when CONFIRMED has been received from all the
1259 Inferiors in the Confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from any other
1260 Inferiors. If other replies (CANCELLED from a Confirm-set Inferior, CONFIRMED from other
1261 Inferiors, HAZARD from any) are received, the reply to the Terminator is INFERIOR_STATUSES,
1262 identifying which Inferior(s) had problems.

1263 Figure 14 shows an example message sequence for a Composer with three Inferiors. The
1264 Terminator (Application Element) chooses to prepare Inferiors 1 and 3 explicitly – the numbers in
1265 parentheses on the Terminator:Composer messages represent the inferior-identifiers in the
1266 “inferior-list” parameters. Both 1 and 3 prepare successfully, but the Terminator then decides to
1267 make 1 and 2 the Confirm-set; that is, if the transaction confirms only 1 and 2 are confirmed. The
1268 Terminator issues CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the Composer. A PREPARED message has not
1269 been received from Inferior 2 yet, so the Composer issues PREPARE to it, and waits for the
1270 PREPARED. At the same time, it sends CANCEL to Inferior 3, which has been excluded from the
1271 Confirm-set by the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. After the PREPARED is received from Inferior 2,
1272 the Composer makes the Confirm decision and issues CONFIRM to the Inferiors, and waits for
1273 the CONFIRMED messages before reporting to the Terminator. The CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
1274 in this case did not ask for reporting of hazards (see below) – if it had not, the
1275 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED would have been sent at the same time as the CONFIRM
1276 messages.



1277 Figure 14 Termination sequence for a composer

1278 3.2.8 Confirm-set of intermediates

1279 An Intermediate, that is a Superior that is also an Inferior, also has a Confirm-set, but this is
1280 controlled rather differently to the top-most Superior (Decider) described above.

1281 As an Inferior, the interface between the application and BTP Elements is not fully defined in this
1282 specification. However, within the standard Control Relationship, issuing BEGIN with a related
1283 CONTEXT to a Factory will cause the creation of a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer (depending
1284 on whether the BEGIN parameter asked for atomic or cohesive behaviour). Initially, of course, the
1285 new Intermediate has no Inferiors – however, unlike a Participant (in the strict sense of the term),
1286 it has a “superior-address” to which ENROL can be sent to enrol Inferiors. This address is a field
1287 of the new CONTEXT.

1288 Figure 15 is a state diagram for a Sub-composer or Sub-coordinator.

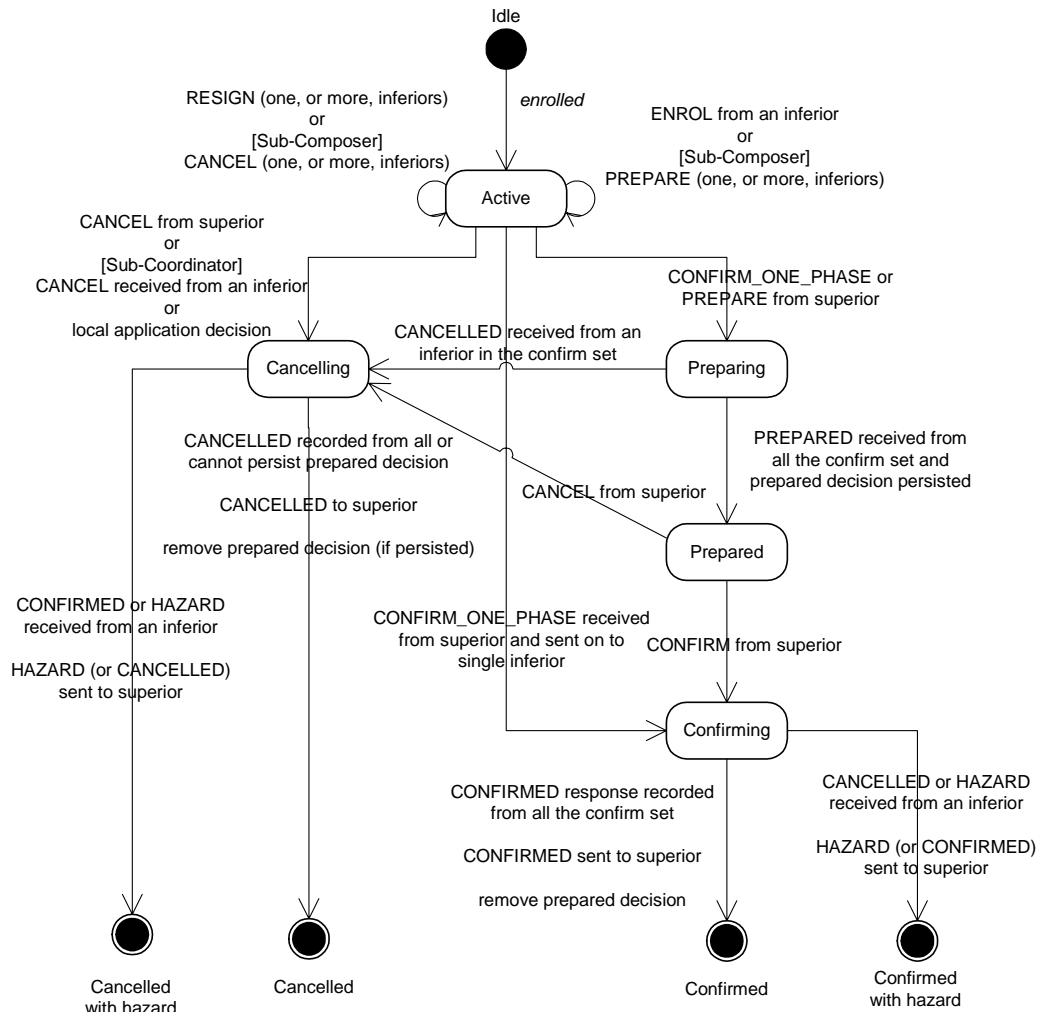


Figure 15 State diagram for Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer

The behaviour of the Intermediate towards its Inferiors, during the active phase, is basically the same as for the Decider:

- ENROL messages can be received, adding a new Inferior
- Inferiors may resign - RESIGN is received from an Inferior. The Inferior is immediately removed from the set of Inferiors
- CANCELLED may be received from an Inferior
- PREPARED may be received from an Inferior

In some circumstances, receipt of an incoming message allows an Intermediate to determine that a state change for the whole Transaction Tree Node takes place. The Intermediate is able to send messages to its Superior at its own initiative (whereas a Decider can only respond to a received message from the Terminator), so the receipt of a message from an Inferior can trigger the sending of messages. This is especially the case if the Intermediate knows (from application knowledge, perhaps involving received or sent CONTEXT_REPLY messages) that there will be no further enrolments. In particular:

- If CANCELLED is received from an Inferior, and this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can itself Cancel - CANCEL is sent to other Inferiors, and CANCELLED to the Superior

1308 • If RESIGN is received from the only Inferior and there will be no other enrolments, the
1309 Intermediate can itself resign, sending RESIGN to the Superior

1310 • If PREPARED is received from the Inferior, it is known there will be no other enrolments and
1311 this is a Sub-coordinator, the Sub-coordinator can Become Prepared (assuming successful
1312 persistence of the appropriate information) and send PREPARED to the Superior.

1313 For a Sub-composer, application logic will invariably be involved in determining what effect a
1314 CANCELLED and PREPARED from an Inferior have – though in a real implementation, this logic
1315 may be delegated to the BTP-support software.

1316 The Intermediate may initiate cancellation or the two-phase outcome exchange, either as a result
1317 of receiving the corresponding message (CANCEL, PREPARE) from the Superior, or triggered by
1318 its own controlling Application Element. For a Sub-composer, this may be partial - a Sub-
1319 composer might be instructed by the Application Element to Cancel some Inferiors and send
1320 PREPARE to others. Receipt of PREPARE from the Superior will often have a similar effect to a
1321 Decider receiving CONFIRM_TRANSACTION – PREPARE is propagated to all Inferiors that
1322 have not indicated they are PREPARED. However, exactly what happens on receiving PREPARE
1323 will depend on the application – receipt of the PREPARE may be visible to the Application
1324 Element and cause it to initiate further application activity (perhaps causing enrolment of new
1325 Inferiors) before it is determined whether to propagate PREPARE; and with a Sub-composer,
1326 some of the Inferiors may be instructed to Cancel instead.

1327 Assuming the Intermediate does not Cancel as a whole (in which case CANCEL would be sent to
1328 all Inferiors), the Intermediate will at some point attempt to Become Prepared. If it is a Sub-
1329 coordinator, this will require that PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors. For a Sub-
1330 composer, application logic will determine from which Inferiors PREPARED is required, with the
1331 others being cancelled. In either case, the Intermediate will persist the information about the
1332 Inferiors that are to be in the Confirm-set and about the Superior, if this persisting is successful,
1333 send PREPARED to its own Superior.

1334 If CANCEL is subsequently received from the Superior, this is propagated to all the Inferiors and
1335 the persistent information removed (or effectively removed as far as recovery is concerned). It is
1336 not important which order this is done in, since the recovery sequence will ensure that a cancel
1337 outcome is eventually delivered anyway.

1338 If CONFIRM is received from the Superior (which can only be after sending PREPARED to the
1339 Superior), this is likewise propagated to the Inferiors. For a Sub-coordinator, CONFIRM is
1340 invariably sent to all Inferiors. However, for a Sub-composer it is possible that further application
1341 logic intervenes and some of the Inferiors are rejected from the Confirm-set at this late stage.
1342 (This can only occur when the application work, as defined by the Contract to the Superior, can
1343 be performed by some sub-set of the Inferiors.) The Intermediate may, but is not required to,
1344 change the persistent information to reflect the Confirm outcome (though a Sub-composer that
1345 selects only some Inferiors probably will need to re-write the information to ensure the correct
1346 subset are confirmed despite possible failures). If the information is not changed, then, on
1347 recovery, the Intermediate will find itself to be in a prepared state and will interrogate the Superior
1348 to re-determine the outcome. If the information is changed, a recovered Intermediate can
1349 immediately continue with ordering confirmation to its Inferiors.

1350 If CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is received from the Superior, either before or after the Intermediate
1351 has Become Prepared, the effect is very similar to a Decider receiving
1352 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION. If there is only one Inferior, the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may be
1353 propagated to that Inferior. Otherwise, the Intermediate behaves as a Decider, making a Confirm
1354 decision if it can.

1355 If one or more Inferiors make contradictory autonomous decisions, or HAZARD is received from
1356 an Inferior, the Intermediate may report this to the Superior using HAZARD. However, BTP does
1357 not require this. Since the Superior may be owned and controlled by a different organisation,
1358 there may be business reasons not to report such problems.

3.3 Optimisations and variations

3.3.1 Spontaneous prepared

As described above, before a Superior can order confirmation to an Inferior, the Inferior must become “prepared”, meaning that it is ready to Confirm or to Cancel as it so ordered and send the PREPARED message as a report of this. In the conventional message sequence, as shown above, the Inferior attempts to Become Prepared when it receives a PREPARE message from the Superior. The PREPARE in turn is sent by the Superior when it receives an appropriate request from its controlling application (or from its own Superior, if there is one). The application controlling the Superior will request the sending of PREPARE when it determines that no further application work associated with this Inferior (or, perhaps with the whole Business Transaction) will occur.

However, for some applications, the Application Element controlling the Inferior will know that the application work for which the Inferior will be responsible is complete before a PREPARE is sent from the Superior. In fact, because the Application Element has autonomy in determining how application work is to be allocated to Inferiors, it is possible for the Inferior-side Application Element to know the work is complete **for a particular Inferior** when Superior-side Application Element will be sending more message to the Inferior-side. (The future work will, probably, require the enrollment of additional Inferiors.)

BTP consequently allows the Application Element controlling an Inferior to cause the Inferior to Become Prepared, and to send PREPARED to the Superior without PREPARE having been received from the Superior. From the perspective of the BTP Superior the Inferior sends PREPARED spontaneously. Apart from this, a spontaneous PREPARED message is the same as, and has the same effect and implications as one induced by a PREPARE message.

3.3.2 One-shot

In the “conventional” message sequence shown above and assuming the Initiator, Terminator and Coordinator on the one side, and “Service”, Enroller and Participant on the other are located within their respective parties, there are eight messages passed in one direction or the other between the two parties. There are four round-trip exchanges: the application request and response exchange, the ENROL/ENROLLED exchange (going in the opposite direction and overlapped with the application exchange), then PREPARE/PREPARED and the CONFIRM/CONFIRMED. However, if the application exchange is a single request/response, it is possible to reduce these eight to two round-trips— the first of which merges the first three of the conventional sequence. The fundamental two-phase nature of BTP (or any coordination mechanism) means there have to be at least two round trips – one before the Confirm-or-Cancel decision is made at the Superior, one after. This merging of the exchanges is termed “one-shot”, as it requires only one exchange to take the relationship from non-existent to waiting for the Confirm-or-Cancel decision.

Figure 16 shows a typical “one-shot” message sequence. The diagram distinguishes an additional aspect of the Application Elements, labelled “context-handler”. This is not a Role in the BTP model, but is used only to distinguish a set of responsibilities and actions. In a real implementation these might be performed by the user application itself, or might be performed by the BTP-supporting infrastructure on the path between the Application Elements. (Figure 9 could be redrawn to show the context-handlers, but to no particular benefit) As in the conventional case, the CONTEXT is sent related to the application request (the creation of the CONTEXT by the Factory is not shown and is the same as the conventional case). The “context-handler” is aware of the sending of the CONTEXT.

On the responder (service side), however, when the Application Element creates the Inferior, the ENROL is not sent immediately, but retained. The application performs the “Provisional Effect” implied by the received message and the Inferior becomes prepared and issues a PREPARED message, which is also retained. When the application response is available, it is sent with the

1409 retained messages and the CONTEXT_REPLY (which indicates that the related ENROL will
1410 complete the enrolments implied by the earlier transmission of the CONTEXT.

1411 When this group of messages is received by the context-handler on the Client side, the contained
1412 ENROL and PREPARED messages are forwarded to the Superior (whose address was on the
1413 original CONTEXT and so is known to the context-handler). An ENROLLED message is sent
1414 back to the context-handler, assuring it that the enrolment was successful and the application can
1415 progress. If enrollment fails and the Business Transaction is atomic, confirmation must be
1416 prevented – this responsibility falls on the context-handler and the Client application, since the
1417 failure of the enrolment implies that Superior itself is inaccessible. If enrolment fails and the
1418 Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the appropriate response is a matter for the application.

1419 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single Application Message,
1420 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each one sent related with the
1421 CONTEXT_REPLY. If an operation fails, a CANCELLED message may be sent instead of a
1422 PREPARED – if the Superior is atomic, this will ensure it cancels, if cohesive, the Client
1423 application will be aware of this and behave appropriately.

1424 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
1425 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
1426 the application or by the binding in use.

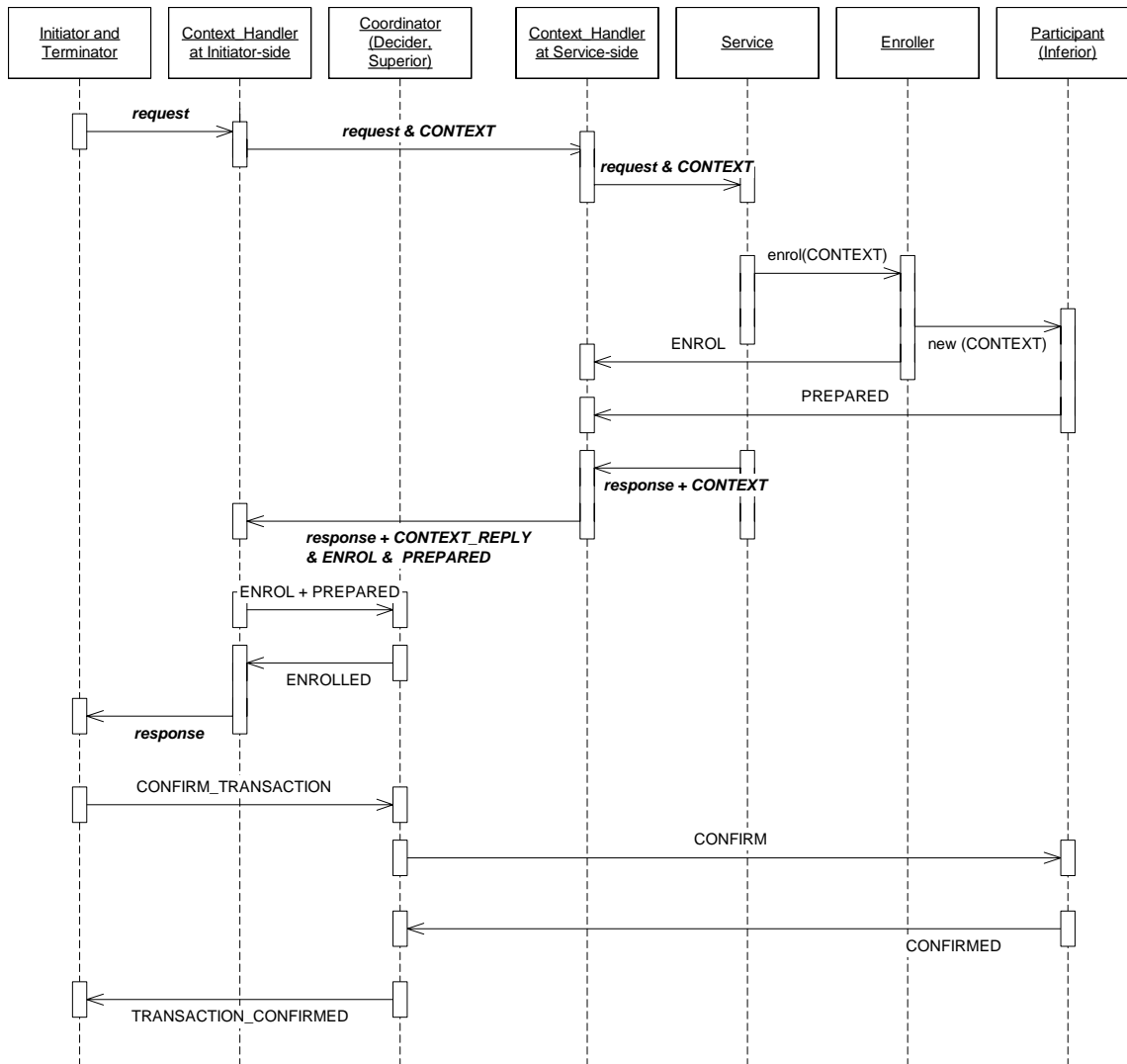


Figure 16 A message sequence showing the “one-shot” optimisation

3.3.3 Resignation

After an Inferior is enrolled, it may be determined that the application work it is responsible for has no real effect – more exactly, that the Counter-effect, if cancelled, and the Final Effect, if confirmed, will be identical. In such a case the Inferior can effectively un-enrol itself by sending a RESIGN message to the Superior. This can be done “spontaneously” (as far as BTP is concerned) or as a response to a received PREPARE message. It cannot be done after the Inferior has Become Prepared.

An Inferior from which RESIGN has been received is not considered an Inferior in discussion of the Confirm-set – the phrase “remaining Inferiors” is used to mean only non-resigned Inferiors.

3.3.4 One-phase confirmation

If a Coordinator or Composer that has been requested to Confirm has only one (remaining) Inferior in the Confirm-set, it may delegate the Confirm-or-Cancel decision to that Inferior, just requesting it to Confirm rather than performing the two-phase exchange. This is done by sending the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message. Unlike the two-phase exchange (PREPARED received, CONFIRM sent), it is possible with CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE for a failure to occur that leads to

1444 the original Coordinator or Composer (and its controlling Application Element – the Terminator)
1445 being uncertain whether the outcome was confirmation or cancellation.

1446 **3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions**

1447 As described above, BTP does not require a Participant, while it is responsible for holding
1448 application resources such that can be confirmed or cancelled, to use any particular mechanism
1449 for maintaining this state. A Participant that “becomes prepared” may choose to let the
1450 “Provisional Effect” be identical to the “Final Effect”, and hold a compensating “counter effect”
1451 ready to implement cancellation; or it may make the Provisional Effect effectively null, and only
1452 perform the real application work as the Final Effect if confirmed; or the “Provisional Effect” may
1453 involve performance of the application work and locking application data against other access; or
1454 other patterns, as may be constrained or permitted by the application.

1455 Although a Participant is not required to lock data (as would be the case with some other
1456 transaction specifications) on becoming prepared, it is nevertheless in a state of doubt, and this
1457 doubt may have application or business implications. Accordingly it is recognised that a
1458 Participant (or, rather the business party controlling the Application Element and the Participant)
1459 may need to limit the promise made by sending PREPARED, and retain the right to apply its own
1460 decision to Confirm or Cancel to the Participant and the application effects it is responsible for.
1461 This is described as an “autonomous” decision. It is closely analogous to the heuristic decisions
1462 recognised in other transaction specifications. The only difference is the conceptual one that
1463 heuristic decisions are typically considered to occur only as a result of rare and unpredictable
1464 failure, whereas BTP recognises that the right to take an autonomous decision may be critical to
1465 the willingness of a business party to be involved in the Business Transaction at all. BTP
1466 therefore allows Participants (and all Inferiors) to indicate that there are limits on how long they
1467 are willing to promise to remain in the prepared state, and that after that time they may invoke
1468 their right of taking an autonomous decision.

1469 Taking an autonomous decision will of course run the risk of breaking the intended consistency of
1470 outcome across the Business Transaction, if the autonomous decision of the Inferior contradicts
1471 the decision (for this Inferior) made by the Superior. The Superior will have received the
1472 PREPARED message and thus be permitted to make a Confirm decision (directly, or through
1473 exchanges with a Terminator Application Element or with its own Superior). An Inferior taking an
1474 autonomous decision informs the Superior by sending CONFIRMED or CANCELLED, as
1475 appropriate, without waiting for an outcome order from the Superior. This may cross the outcome
1476 message from the Superior, or the Superior may not make its decision till later. If the decisions
1477 agree, the normal CONFIRM or CANCEL message is sent. In the case of CANCEL, this
1478 completes the relationship – the CANCEL and CANCELLED messages acknowledge each other,
1479 regardless of which travels first. In the case of CONFIRM, another CONFIRMED message is
1480 needed.

1481 If the Superior’s decision is contradicted by the autonomous decision, the Superior may need to
1482 record this, report it to management systems or inform the Terminator application or its own
1483 Superior. When this has been done (details are implementation-specific, but may be constrained
1484 by the application), the Superior sends a CONTRADICTION message to the Inferior. If an
1485 outcome message was sent earlier (crossing the announcement of the autonomous decision), the
1486 Inferior will already know there was a contradiction, but the receipt of the CONTRADICTION
1487 message informs the Inferior that the Superior knows and has done whatever it considers
1488 necessary to cope.

1489 As mentioned, BTP allows an Inferior to inform the Superior, with a qualifier on the PREPARED
1490 message, that the promise to remain in the prepared state will expire. In turn this allows the
1491 application on the Superior side to avoid risking a contradictory decision by making and sending
1492 its own decision in time. The Superior side can also indicate, with another qualifier, a minimum
1493 time for which it expects the prepared promise to remain valid.

1494 As well as deliberate and forewarned autonomous decisions, BTP recognises that failures and
1495 exceptional conditions may force unplanned autonomous decisions. In the protocol sequence

these are treated exactly like planned autonomous decisions – if they contradict, the Superior will be informed and a CONTRADICTION message sent to the Inferior.

Autonomous decisions, planned or unplanned, are equivalent to the heuristic decisions of other transaction systems. The term is avoided in BTP since it may carry implications that it only occurs in an unplanned manner.

3.4 Recovery and failure handling

3.4.1 Types of failure

BTP is designed to ensure the delivery of a consistent decision for a Business Transaction to the parties involved, even in the event of failure. Failures can be classified as:

- **Communication failure:** messages between BTP Actors are lost and not delivered. BTP assumes the Carrier Protocol ensures that messages are either delivered correctly (without corruption) or are lost, but does not assume that all losses are reported nor that messages sent separately are delivered in the order of sending.
- **Network Node failure (system failure, site failure):** a machine hosting one or more BTP Actors stops processing and all its volatile data is lost. BTP assumes a site fails by stopping – it either operates correctly or not at all, it never operates incorrectly.

Communication failure may become known to a BTP implementation by an indication from the lower layers or may be inferred (or suspected) by the expiry of a timeout. Recovery from a communication failure requires only that the two Actors can again send messages to each other and continue or complete the progress of the Business Transaction.

A Network Node failure is distinguished from communication failure because there is loss of volatile state. To ensure consistent application of the decision of a Business Transaction, BTP requires that some state information will be persisted despite Network Node failure. Implementations choose, depending on application requirements, what real events correspond to Network Node failure but leave the persistent information undamaged; however, for most application uses, power failure should be survivable (an exception would be if the data manipulated by the associated operations was volatile). In all cases, there will be some level of event sufficiently catastrophic to lose persistent information and the ability to recover– destruction of the computer or bankruptcy of the organisation, for example.

Recovery from Network Node failure involves recreating an accessible communications endpoint in a Network Node that has access to the persistent information for incomplete transactions. This may be a recreation of the original Actor using the same addresses; or using a different address; or there may be a distinct recovery entity, which can access the persistent data, but has a different address; other implementation approaches are possible. The recovered, and possibly relocated Actor may or may not be capable of performing new application work. Restoration of the Actor from persistent information will often result in a partial loss of state, relative to the volatile state reached before the failure. In some states, there may be total loss of knowledge of the Business Transaction, including particular Superior:Inferior relationships. After recovery from Network Node failure, the implementation behaves much as if a communication failure had occurred.

3.4.2 Persistent information

BTP **requires** that certain state information is persisted – these are information that records an Inferior's decision to be prepared, a Superior's decision to Confirm and an Inferior's autonomous decision. Requiring the first two to be persistent ensures that a consistent decision can be reached for the Business Transaction and that it is delivered to all involved BTP Nodes, despite failure. Requiring an Inferior's autonomous decision to be persistent allows BTP to ensure that, if the autonomous decision is contradictory (i.e. opposite to the decision at the Superior), the contradiction will be reported to the Superior, despite failures.

BTP also permits, but does not require, recovery of the Superior:Inferior relationship in the active state (unlike many transaction protocols, where a communication or node failure in active state would invariably cause rollback of the transaction). Recovery in the active state may require that the application exchange is resynchronised as well – BTP does not directly support this, but allows continuation of the Business Transaction if the application desires it. Apart from the (optional) recovery in active state, BTP follows the well-known presume-abort model – it is only **required** that information be persisted when decisions are made (and not, for example, on enrolment). This means that on recovery one side may have persistent information while the other does not. This occurs, among other cases, when an Inferior has decided to be prepared but the Superior never confirmed (so the decision is “presumed” to be cancelled), and when the Superior did Confirm, the Inferior applied the confirmation and removed its persistent information but the acknowledgement message (CONFIRMED) was never received by the Superior.

Information to be persisted when an Inferior decides to be prepared has to be sufficient to re-establish communication with the Superior, to apply a Confirm decision and to apply a Cancel decision. It will thus need to include the addressing and identification information for the Superior. The information needed to apply the Confirm or Cancel decision will depend on the application and the associated operations.

A Superior must persist the corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication with the Inferior – that is the addressing and identification information for the Inferior. When it must persist this information depends on its position within the Transaction Tree. If it is the top of the tree – i.e. it is the Decider for the Business Transaction -- it need only persist this information if and when it makes a decision to Confirm (and, for a Cohesion, only if this Inferior is in the Confirm-set). A Superior that is an intermediate in the tree – i.e. it is an Inferior to some other Superior – must persist the information about each of its own Inferiors as part of (or before) persisting its own decision to be prepared. For such an intermediate, the “decision to confirm” as Superior is made when either CONFIRM is received from its Superior or it makes an autonomous decision to Confirm. If CONFIRM is received, the persistent information may be changed to show the Confirm decision, but alternatively, the receipt of the CONFIRM can be treated as the decision itself and the CONFIRM message propagated to the Inferiors without changing the persistent information. If the persistent information is left unchanged and there is a node failure, on recovery the entity (as an Inferior) will be in a prepared state, and will rediscover the Confirm decision (using the recovery exchanges to its Superior) before propagating it to its Inferior(s).

Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, and the BTP messages may be repeated if they are lost in transit (see next section), the persistent information may need to include sufficient information to recreate the qualifiers, to allow them to be resent with their carrying BTP message. This applies both to qualifiers on PREPARED (which would be persisted by the Inferior) and on CONFIRM (which would be persisted by the Superior).

In some cases, an implementation may not need to make an active change to have a persistent record of a decision, provided that the implementation will restore itself to the appropriate state on recovery. For example, an implementation that, as Inferior, always used the default-is-cancel mechanism, and recorded the timeout (to Cancel) in the persistent information on becoming prepared, and always updated or removed that record when it applied a Confirm instruction could treat the presence of an expired record as effectively a record of an autonomous Cancel decision.

3.4.3 Recovery messages

Once the Superior:Inferior relationship has entered the completion phase, BTP does not generally use special messages in recovery, but merely permits the resending of the previous message. Thus, for example, PREPARE, PREPARED, CANCEL, CONFIRM can all be sent repeatedly. Resending the previous message means a possible loss of the original message may be invisible to the receiver. The trigger for this re-sending is implementation dependent – a reported communication failure, a timeout expiry while waiting for a reply, the re-establishment of communications or the general restoration of function after a node failure are all possible triggers. An incoming repetition of the last message received, if it has already been replied to (e.g.

receiving PREPARE after PREPARED has been sent), should normally trigger a resending of the last message sent – since that sent message may have got lost.⁴

While in the active phase – i.e. prior to entering completion – there is no appropriate last message that can be sent. However, for active-phase recovery there needs to be some way for the BTP Actors to determine that the Peer is still there and still aware of the Superior:Inferior relationship. In this case, the peers can interrogate each other using the INFERIOR_STATE or SUPERIOR_STATE messages, informing the Peer of their own state and requesting a response – which may be the opposite message, or one of the main BTP messages (which perhaps had been lost). If it is another SUP|INFERIOR_STATE message, that reply does not ask for a response. Receiving a SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages that asks for a response does not require an immediate response. Especially if an implementation is waiting to determine a decision (perhaps because it is itself waiting for a decision from elsewhere), an implementation may choose not to reply until it wishes too. Alternatively, it can reply with a SUP|INFERIOR)STATE message with a status showing that the message has been received but the definitive reply is not yet available. This may be particularly useful in long-lived business transactions, where the time for a decision to be made may be much longer than a reasonable retry time.

The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also used as replies when the receiver of **any** of the Superior:Inferior message has determined that there is no corresponding state information – the targeted Superior or Inferior does not exist (or is known to have completed and is no longer an active entity). The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages with a status of “unknown” is the indication that the state information does not exist.

The SUP|INFERIOR_STATE messages are also available as replies to any Superior:Inferior message in the (transient, one hopes) case where, after failure, an implementation cannot currently determine whether the persistent information exists or not, or what its state is, and so cannot give a definitive answer. A SUP|INFERIOR_STATE message with a status of “inaccessible” indicates that the existence of state information cannot be determined. The receiver of such a message should normally treat it as a “retry later” suggestion.

3.4.4 Redirection

As described above, BTP uses the presume-abort model for recovery. A corollary of this is that there are cases where one side will attempt to re-establish communication when there is no persistent information for the relationship at the far-end, because that side either never reached a state where the state was persisted, or had been persisted, but then progressed to remove the state information. In such cases, it is important the side that is attempting recovery can distinguish between unsuccessful attempts to connect to the holder of the persistent information and when the information no longer exists. If the Peer information does not exist, the side that is attempting recovery can draw appropriate conclusions (that the Peer either was never prepared, never confirmed or has already completed) and complete its part of the transaction; if it merely fails to get through, it is stuck in attempting recovery.

Two mechanisms are provided to assist implementation flexibility while allowing completion of Superior:Inferior relationships when only one side has any persistent information. The mechanisms are:

- Address fields which provide the address that will be used by the Peer to send messages to an Actor (effectively a “callback address”) can be a set of addresses, which are alternatives, one of which is chosen as the target address for the future message. If the sender of that message finds the address does not work, it can try a different alternative.

⁴ BTP's capability of binding to alternative carrier protocols is part of the motivation for not having a distinct recovery message sequence, since the carrier binding does not necessarily have a well-defined communication failure indication.

- The REDIRECT message can be used to inform the Peer that an address previously given is no longer valid and to supply a replacement address (or set of addresses). REDIRECT can be issued either as a response to receipt of a message or spontaneously.

The two mechanisms can be used in combination, with one or more of the original set of addresses just being a redirector, which does not itself ever have direct access to the state information for the transaction, but will respond to any message with an appropriate REDIRECT.

REDIRECT as a message is only used on the Superior:Inferior relationship, where each side holds the address of the other. On the other relationships (e.g. Terminator:Decider), one side (e.g. Terminator) has the address of the other, and initiates all the message exchanges.

However, the entity whose address is known to the other may itself move - e.g. if a Coordinator, which will be both Decider and Superior changes its address as a Superior, it will probably change its address as a Decider too. In this case, a FAULT reply to a misdirected message can be used, assuming there is some entity available at, or on the path to the old address that understands BTP sufficiently to provide the redirection information.

Some implementations, in which a single addressable entity with one constant address deals with all transactions, distinguishing them by identifier, will not need to supply "backup" addresses (and would only use REDIRECT if permanently migrated).

3.4.5 Terminator:Decider failures and transaction timelimit

BTP does not provide facilities or impose requirements on the recovery of Terminator:Decider relationships, other than allowing messages to be repeated. A Terminator may survive failures (by retaining knowledge of the Decider's address and identifier), but this is an implementation option. Although a Decider (if it decides to Confirm) will persist information about the Confirm decision, it is not required, after failure, to remain accessible using the address it originally gave to the Initiator (and used by the Terminator). Any such recovery is an implementation option.

A Decider has no way of initiating a call to a Terminator to ensure that it is still active, and thus no way of detecting that a Terminator has failed. The Decider always has the right to initiate cancellation, but if the application (Terminator) and the Decider have different views about how long a "long time" is, then either the Decider might wait unnecessarily for a completion request (e.g. CONFIRM_TRANSACTION) that will never arrive, or it might initiate cancellation while the application is still active. To avoid these irritations, a standard qualifier "Transaction timelimit" can be used (by the Initiator) to inform the Decider when it can assume the Terminator will not request confirmation and so it (the Decider) should initiate cancellation.

3.4.6 Contradictions and hazard

As described above (see "3.3.5 Autonomous cancel, autonomous confirm and contradictions"), in some circumstances an Inferior may apply a decision that is contradictory to the decision of the Superior. This can occur in a semi-planned manner, when the Inferior has announced a timeout on the PREPARED message but no outcome message has been received, or as a result of an exceptional condition that forces the Inferior to break the promise implicit in PREPARED, regardless of timers. In both cases, this is considered an autonomous decision by the Inferior. An autonomous decision, of itself, does not imply a contradiction – it only results in a contradiction if the decision is opposite to that of the Superior (in the case of a cohesive Superior, opposite to the decision that applies to this Inferior).

In order to ensure that a contradiction is detected despite node and communication failures, it is required that information about the taking of the autonomous decision be persisted until a BTP message received from the Superior indicates either that there was no contradiction (the decisions were in line – CANCEL is received after an autonomous Cancel or CONFIRM is received after an autonomous Confirm) or that the Superior is aware of the contradiction (CONTRADICTION is received). Note that the Inferior will become aware of the fact of the contradiction when it receives the "wrong" message, but must retain the record of its own decision until it receives the CONTRADICTION message, which tells it the Superior knows too.

The Superior's action on becoming aware of the contradiction is not determined by this specification. In particular, if the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it is not required by this specification to report the contradiction to its own Superior (which may, for example, be controlled by a different organisation). The Superior may report the problem to management systems or record it for manual repair. However, BTP does provide mechanisms to report the contradiction to the next higher Superior (if there is one) or to the Terminator Application Element.

A contradiction occurring in an Inferior will usually mean the immediate Superior has a "mixed" condition – some of the application work it was responsible for has confirmed, some has cancelled (and contrary to any Cohesion Confirm-set selection). If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, it can report the mixed condition to its own Superior with the HAZARD message. If the Superior is the top-most in the tree, it can report the problem with the INFERIOR_STATUSES message, which will detail the state of all the Inferiors. Figure 17 shows a message sequence in a Transaction Tree with two levels. The Participant makes an autonomous Cancel decision, but the Coordinator decides to Confirm. The Confirm decision from the Coordinator, passed on by the Sub-coordinator, crosses with the CANCELLED message from the Participant. The Participant waits for the CANCELLED from the Sub-coordinator, which chooses to report the problem with HAZARD to the Coordinator.

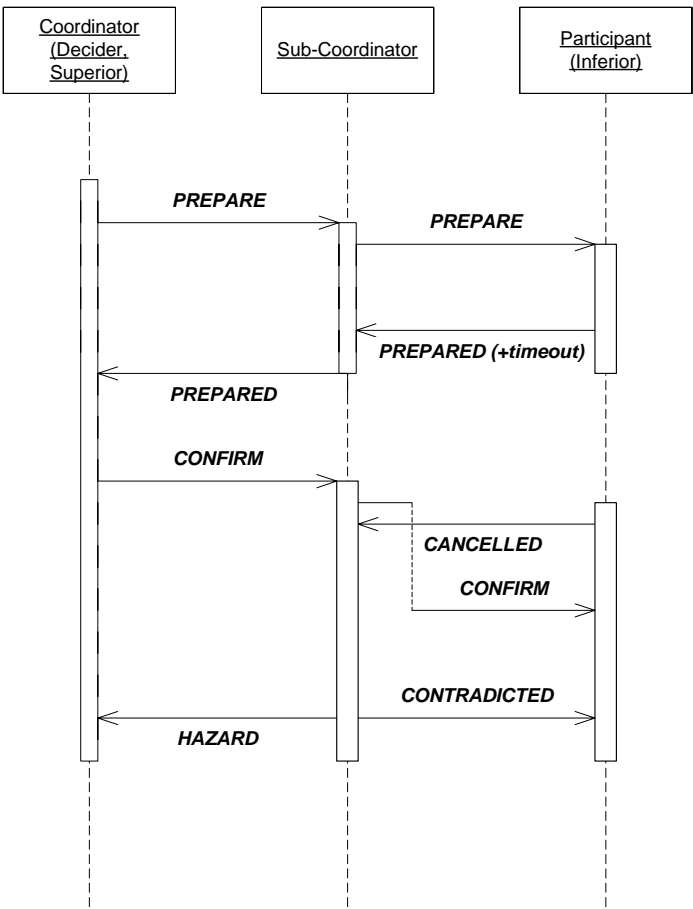


Figure 17 Message sequence showing contradiction, reported with HAZARD

If a Sub-coordinator or Sub-composer, having sent (or attempted to send) the outcome message to its Inferiors, is temporarily unable to get a response (CONFIRMED or CANCELLED), it may either wait until a response does come back or choose to reply to its own Superior with a HAZARD message indicating that a contradiction is "possible". If it does choose to send HAZARD, it is required to persist a record of this until it receives a CONTRADICTION message from the Superior, or a message from the Inferior indicating there was no contradiction in fact.

1716 HAZARD is also used to indicate that it has become impossible to cleanly and consistently
1717 achieve either a confirmed or a cancelled state for the application work. In this case, there is can
1718 be no guarantee that the problem will be reliably reported – especially because it may be the
1719 inability to persist information that is the cause of the problem.

1720 3.5 Relation of BTP to application and Carrier Protocols

1721 BTP messages are communicated between Actors in two distinguishable circumstances:

- 1722 a) in establishing and progressing the outcome and Control Relationships between BTP
1723 Actors, and between Application Elements and BTP Actors – Initiator:Factory,
1724 Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior etc.
- 1725 b) in association with Application Messages that are communicated between Application
1726 Elements.

1727 In the first case, interoperable communication requires a specification of how the abstract BTP
1728 messages are represented and encoded, and how they are transmitted. This specification is a
1729 **carrier protocol binding** (or just “binding”, if the context is clear). BTP allows bindings to a
1730 multiplicity of Carrier Protocols. The only requirement that BTP makes is that the transmission of
1731 a message either delivers an uncorrupted message or fails. BTP does not require that the carrier
1732 report failure to deliver a message, to either side, nor that messages are delivered in the order
1733 they are sent (though implementations can take advantage of information from a richer carrier,
1734 which can improve performance in various ways). BTP messages communicated in this way have
1735 semantics that are defined in this specification – a PREPARE message (for example), refers back
1736 to the ENROL via the “inferior-identifier” parameter and is an instruction to the Inferior to become
1737 and report that it is prepared.

1738 In the second case, the full semantics cannot be defined in this specification. Interoperation with
1739 BTP requires that the parties have a common understanding of what is being confirmed or
1740 cancelled, but this mutual understanding is defined by the Contract of the application, not by BTP.
1741 (The Contract may be explicit or implicit, declared by one side as take-it-or-leave-it, or may be
1742 negotiated in some way.) Part of this Contract will include how the combination of the Application
1743 Protocol (i.e. the Application Messages and their sequencing) and BTP operate such that the two
1744 sides are agreed as to which Application Operations are part of which Business Transaction. This
1745 will often be achieved by sending Application Messages and BTP messages in “association” in
1746 some way – thus an Application Message sent in association with a CONTEXT can be specified
1747 (by the application Contract) to mean that if work is done as result of the receipt of the message,
1748 one or more Inferiors should be enrolled to apply the Confirm/Cancel decision to that work.
1749 Similarly, an Application Message may be sent associated with an ENROL with the contractual
1750 understanding that the message refers to some application work that has been made the
1751 responsibility of the Inferior being enrolled.

1752 The concrete representation of this “association” is also a matter for the Application Protocol
1753 specification. There are several ways this can be done, including:

- 1754 • the BTP message is contained within the Application Message, or both are contained within a
1755 larger construct;
- 1756 • the Application Message contains a field that is the superior-identifier or inferior-identifier that
1757 is also present on the CONTEXT or the ENROL
- 1758 • the BTP message contains a qualifier that references (a field of) the Application Message in
1759 some way (e.g. if the Application Message is an invoice, the qualifier might contain the
1760 invoice number)
- 1761 • the encoding of the BTP and Application Messages reference each other (e.g. using XML id
1762 and refid attributes)

1763 In all cases, the application specification⁵ will need to define the mechanism so that both parties
1764 have common understanding. Many applications will use the same mechanism and their
1765 specifications can therefore take advantage of standard patterns, and their implementations of
1766 standard tools.

1767 The association of an Application Message with a BTP message is analogous to the concept of
1768 “related” BTP messages. “Related” BTP messages are sent as a group, with a declared and
1769 defined semantic for the group. Associated application and BTP messages can be considered as
1770 “related”, with the proviso that the semantic is defined by the application, not by BTP.

1771 There is no necessary relationship between how the Application Messages and any associated
1772 BTP messages are transmitted by Carrier Protocols, and the carrier binding for the BTP
1773 messages. BTP messages are invariably sent to a BTP Actor whose address has been passed to
1774 the sender by some means – thus a CONTEXT contains the address of the Superior to which
1775 ENROLs will be sent, and the ENROL contains the address of the Inferior. Similarly, BEGUN
1776 contains the address (as Decider) of the new Composer or Coordinator. These addresses are all
1777 sets of addresses (possibly of cardinality one), and each individual address identifies which
1778 binding is to be used. Thus, for example, when a CONTEXT is sent associated with an
1779 Application Message, the ENROL will travel on a carrier binding identified by the particular
1780 address from the CONTEXT that the Enroller chooses to use – which may have no relationship to
1781 how the Application Message arrived.

1782 Despite this, it will be common that the application binding and the BTP binding will use the same
1783 carrier. This is the case in the bindings specified in this edition of the specification, which define a
1784 binding of BTP to SOAP 1.1 over HTTP. Included in this SOAP/HTTP binding specification, are
1785 rules that allow an application to associate (relate) a single CONTEXT or a single ENROL
1786 (carried in the SOAP header) with the Application Message(s) carried in the SOAP body.

1787 **3.6 Other elements**

1788 **3.6.1 Identifiers**

1789 An Identifier is a globally unambiguous identification of the state corresponding to one of Decider,
1790 Superior or Inferior. Where a single entity has more than one of these roles (at the same BTP
1791 Node in the same transaction, as with a Sub-coordinator that is both Superior and Inferior), the
1792 Identifiers may be the same or different, at implementation option - they are distinguished by
1793 which messages the Identifier is used on. (A Superior has only one Superior-identifier, although it
1794 may be in multiple Superior:Inferior relationships, each with a separate state in terms of the state
1795 table).

1796 The state identified by an Identifier can be accessed by BTP messages sent to any of the
1797 addresses supplied with the Identifier in the appropriate message (CONTEXT, BEGUN, ENROL),
1798 or as updated by REDIRECT. An Identifier itself has no location implications. (Identifiers are
1799 specified, in the XML representation, as syntactically URIs - by their use as names of BTP
1800 entities, they are URNs. If an Identifier happens to specify a network location (i.e. it is a URL), it is
1801 treated as an opaque value by BTP)

1802 Identifiers are specified as being globally unambiguous - the same Identifier only ever identifies
1803 one Decider, Superior or Inferior over all systems and all time. In practice, an Identifier could be
1804 re-used if there is no possibility of the colliding values being confused. However implementations
1805 are recommended to use truly unambiguous Identifiers (that is to use them as URNs).

⁵ The “application specification” or “application protocol specification” may be very informal or may be a standardised agreement.

3.6.2 Addresses

In most cases, BTP Actors that need to communicate are informed of each others addresses from received BTP messages. When an Inferior is to be enrolled, a CONTEXT message which contains the address of the Superior will have been received or otherwise passed to the Enroller and the Inferior. The ENROL message received by the Superior contains the address of the Inferior. The BEGUN returned from a Factory to the Initiator contains the address of the Decider, and this can be passed to the Terminator or any **Status Requestor**.

The addresses carried in these messages (which are effectively “call-back” addresses, to be used as the destination of future messages) are sets of tripartite addresses. Each contains:

- an identifier (binding name) for the binding to an underlying transport, or Carrier Protocol;
- a “binding address”, in a format specific to the carrier which is the information necessary to connect using that carrier;
- an optional additional information field.

The optional additional information is opaque to all but the future destination (which also created this address for itself) and is used however the implementation there wishes (e.g. it can be used to distinguish a particular program object, or to relay on, perhaps over a different protocol). The multiple members of the set allow support of multiple carrier bindings (including both different versions of standard bindings and proprietary bindings) and for relocation of the BTP Actor.

When a message is actually to be sent, the sender, possessing the set of addresses for the destination, chooses one - restricting its choice to bindings that it supports obviously, but not otherwise constrained by the specification. The binding address will be used by the sender's carrier implementation (depending on the protocol, the address may or may not be transmitted – with http, for example, it is), The additional information, if present, will be included in the BTP message. The chosen address is considered the “target-address” when considering the abstract message, but only the additional information will normally appear within the encoded BTP-message (the encoding used is part of the binding specification, which could require that all of the address is (redundantly) transmitted, if the specifier so chose).

Where a BTP message invokes a reply – as with the Initiator:Factory, Terminator:Decider and Status Requestor:various roles – the receiver (Factory, Decider, etc) of the message will not know *a priori* the address of the sender. Accordingly, in these cases the abstract messages are specified as containing a single “reply-address”. Depending on the binding, and the particular use of the binding, the “reply-address” may be directly represented in the encoding of the BTP message, or may be implicit in the Carrier Protocol. Similar considerations apply in the Superior:Inferior relationship where, although the addresses are normally known by the other side, there are cases when a message is received and must be responded to, but the Peer is unknown. Accordingly, the Superior:Inferior messages contain (in abstract) a single “senders-address” and the identifier of the sender. As with the “reply-address”es, the “senders-address” may be implicit in the Carrier Protocol.

The CONTEXT message does not contain a “target-address”, even as an abstract message, as it is never transmitted between BTP Actors on its own – it is always either related to a BTP BEGIN or BEGUN message, or is passed between Application Elements with some (application-detailed) association with Application Messages.

3.6.3 Qualifiers

Qualifiers are elements of the BTP messages used to exchange additional information between the Actors. Qualifiers can be specified in the BTP specification (“standard qualifiers”), by industry groups, by BTP implementors or for the purposes of particular applications. Of the standard qualifiers in this version of the specification some are constraints on the BTP Contract, such as time limits, and some are further identifiers used to distinguish specific parties in the BTP interchange. Non-standard qualifiers could extend the protocol or carry application-specific information.

1856 **3.6.4 Lists**

1857 Where a parameter of a message represents a list of inferiors (e.g. the inferiors-list and targetted-
1858 qualifiers-list parameters of several messages), each inferior SHOULD only be represented once.
1859 There is no specified behaviour for an implementation that receives such a parameter with one or
1860 more inferiors represented more than once (implementations are free to ignore the duplicate or to
1861 return a FAULT).

Part 2. Normative Specification of BTP

4 Actors, Roles and Relationships

Actors are software agents which process computations. BTP Actors are addressable for the purposes of receiving application and BTP protocol messages transmitted over some underlying communications or carrier protocol. (See section 5.1 “Addresses” for more detail.)

BTP Actors play roles in the sending, receiving and processing of messages. These roles are associated with responsibilities or obligations under the terms of software contracts defined by this specification. (These contracts are stated formally in sections 5 “Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts” and 6 “State Tables”.) A BTP Actor’s computations put the contracts into effect.

A Role is defined and described in terms of a single Business Transaction. An implementation supporting a Role may, as an addressable entity, play the same Role in multiple Business Transactions, simultaneously or consecutively, or a separate addressable entity may be created for each transaction. This is a choice for the implementer, and the addressing mechanisms allow interoperation between implementations that make different choices.

Within a single transaction, one Actor may play several roles, or each Role may be assigned to a distinct Actor. This is again a choice for the implementer. An Actor playing a Role is termed an “actor-in-role”.

Actors may interoperate, in the sense that the roles played by Actors may be implemented using software created by different vendors for each actor-in-role. The section 10 “Conformance”, gives guidelines on the groups of roles that may be implemented in a partial, interoperable implementation of BTP.

The descriptions of the roles concentrate on the normal progression of a Business Transaction, and some of the more important divergences from this. They do not cover all exception cases – the message set definition and the state tables provide a more comprehensive specification.

Note – A BTP Role is approximately equivalent to an interface in some distributed computing mechanisms, or a port-type in WSDL. The definition of a Role includes behaviour.

4.1 Relationships

There are two primary relationships in BTP.

- Between an Application Element that determines that a Business Transaction should be completed (the Role of Terminator) and the BTP Actor at the top of the Transaction Tree (the Role of Decider);
- Between BTP Actors within the tree, where one (the Superior) will inform the other (the Inferior) what the outcome decision is.

These primary relationships are involved in arriving at a decision on the outcome of a Business Transaction, and propagating that decision to all parties to the transaction. Taking the path that is followed when a Business Transaction is confirmed:

- a) The Terminator determines that the Business Transaction should Confirm, if it can; or (for a Cohesion), which parts should Confirm
- b) The Terminator asks the Decider to apply the desired outcome to the tree, if it can guarantee the consistency of the Confirm decision
- c) The Decider, which is Superior to one or more Inferiors, asks its Inferiors if they can agree to a Confirm decision (for a Cohesion, this may not be all the Inferiors)

- 1906 d) If any of those Inferiors are also Superiors, they ask their Inferiors and so on down the
1907 tree
- 1908 e) Inferiors that are not Superiors report if they can agree to a Confirm to their Superior
- 1909 f) Inferiors that are also Superiors report their agreement only if they received such
1910 agreement from their Inferiors, and can agree themselves
- 1911 g) Eventually agreement (or not) is reported to the Decider. If all have agreed, the Decider
1912 makes and persists the Confirm decision (hence the term "Decider" – it decides,
1913 everything else just asked); if any have disagreed, or if the Confirm decision cannot be
1914 persisted, a Cancel decision is made
- 1915 h) The Decider, as Superior tells its Inferiors of the outcome
- 1916 i) Inferiors that are also Superiors tell their Inferiors, recursively down the tree
- 1917 j) The Decider replies to the Terminator's request to Confirm, reporting the outcome
1918 decision
- 1919 There are other relationships that are secondary to Terminator:Decider, Superior:Inferior, mostly
1920 involved in the establishment of the primary relationships. The various particular relationships can
1921 be grouped as the "control" relationships – primarily Terminator:Decider, but also Initiator:Factory;
1922 and the "outcome" relationships – primarily Superior:Inferior, but also Enroller:Superior.
- 1923 The two groups of relationships are linked in that a Decider is a Superior to one or more Inferiors.
1924 There are also similarities in the semantics of some of the exchanges (messages) within the
1925 relationships. However they differ in that
- 1926 • All exchanges between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator (it is
1927 essentially a request/response relationship); either of Superior or Inferior may initiate
1928 messages to the other
 - 1929 • The Superior:Inferior relationship is recoverable – depending on the progress of the
1930 relationship, the two sides will re-establish their shared state after failure; the
1931 Terminator:Decider relationship is not recoverable. The nature of the Superior:Inferior
1932 relationship requires that the two parties know of each other's addresses from when the
1933 relationship is established; the Decider does not need to know the address of the Terminator
1934 (provided it has some way of returning the response to a received message).

1935 4.2 Roles

1936 Figure 18 and Figure 19 -- show the BTP roles that are specialisations of the central Superior and
1937 Inferior roles.

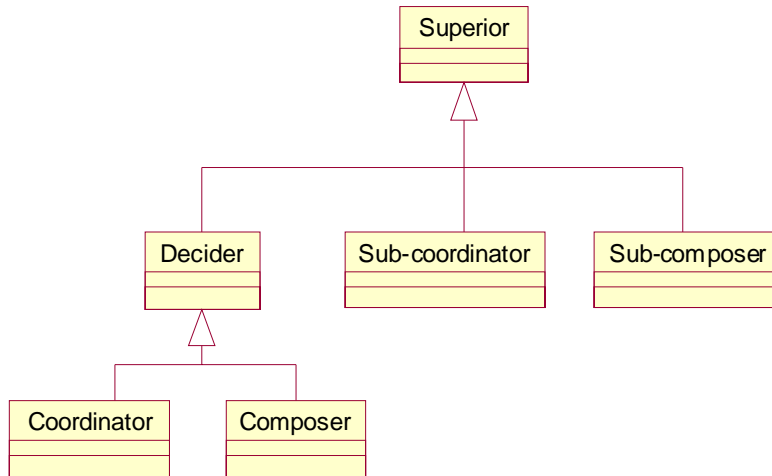


Figure 18 -- Superior and derived roles

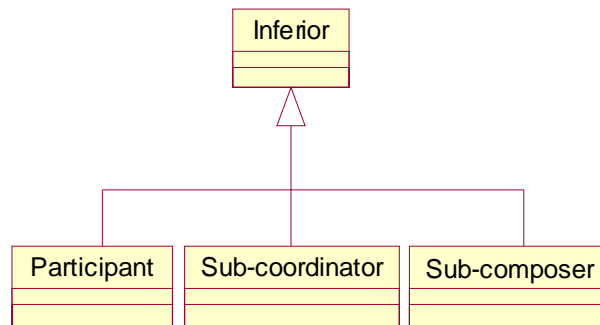


Figure 19 -- Inferior and derived roles

In the following sections, the responsibility of each Role is defined, and the messages that are sent or received by that Role are listed. Note that some roles exist only to have a name for an Actor that issues a message and receives a reply to that message. Some of these roles may be played by several Actors in the course of a single Business Transaction.

For each Role, a table shows which messages are received and sent. Where the messages appear on the same line, the second is a reply to the first. (Consequently the columns are sometimes sent first, received second, sometimes vice versa.)

4.3 Roles involved in the Outcome Relationships

4.3.1 Superior

Accepts enrolments of Inferiors from Enrollers, establishing a Superior:Inferior relationship with each. In cooperation with other Actors and constrained by the messages exchanged with the Inferior, the Superior determines the **Outcome** applicable to the Inferior and informs the Inferior by sending CONFIRM or CANCEL. This outcome can be Confirm only if a PREPARED message is received from the Inferior, and if a record, identifying the Inferior can be persisted. (Whether this record is also a record of a Confirm decision depends on the Superior's position in the Business Transaction as a whole.). The Superior must retain this persistent record until it receives a CONFIRMED (or, in exceptional cases, CANCELLED or HAZARD) from the Inferior.

A Superior may delegate the taking of the Confirm or Cancel decision to an Inferior, if there is only one Inferior, by sending CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE.

1961 A Superior may be *Atomic* or *Cohesive*; an Atomic Superior will apply the same decision to all of
 1962 its Inferiors; a Cohesive Superior may apply Confirm to some Inferiors and Cancel to others, or
 1963 may Confirm some after others have reported cancellation. The set of Inferiors that the Superior
 1964 confirms (or attempts to Confirm) is called the "Confirm-set".
 1965 If RESIGN is received from an Inferior, the Superior:Inferior relationship is ended; the Inferior has
 1966 no further effect on the behaviour of the Superior as a whole.

Superior receives	Superior sends
ENROL	ENROLLED
	PREPARE
	CONFIRM
	CANCEL
	RESIGNED
	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE
	CONTRADICTION
	SUPERIOR_STATE
PREPARED	
CONFIRMED	
CANCELLED	
HAZARD	
RESIGN	
INFERIOR_STATE	
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1967
 1968 Receipt of ENROL establishes a new Superior:Inferior relationship (unless the ENROL is a
 1969 duplicate). ENROLLED is sent only if a reply is asked for on the ENROL.

1970 4.3.2 Inferior

1971 Responsible for applying the Outcome to some set of associated operations – the application
 1972 determines which operations are the responsibility of a particular Inferior.
 1973 An Inferior is **Enrolled** with a single Superior (hereafter referred to as "its Superior"), establishing
 1974 a Superior:Inferior relationship. If the Inferior is able to ensure that either a Confirm or Cancel
 1975 decision can be applied to the associated operations, and can persist information to retain that
 1976 condition, it sends a PREPARED message to the Superior. When the Outcome is received from
 1977 the Superior, the Inferior applies it, deletes the persistent information, and replies with
 1978 CANCELLED or CONFIRMED as appropriate.
 1979 If an Inferior is unable to come to a prepared state, it cancels the associated operations and
 1980 informs the Superior with a CANCELLED message. If it is unable to either come to a prepared
 1981 state, or to Cancel the associated operations, it informs the Superior with a HAZARD message.
 1982 An Inferior that has Become Prepared may, exceptionally, make an autonomous decision to be
 1983 applied to the associated operations, without waiting for the Outcome from the Superior. It is
 1984 required to persist this autonomous decision and report it to the Superior with CONFIRMED or
 1985 CANCELLED as appropriate. If, when CONFIRM or CANCEL is received, the autonomous
 1986 decision and the decision received from the Superior are contradictory, the Inferior must retain
 1987 the record of the autonomous decision until receiving a CONTRADICTION message.

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
PREPARE	
CONFIRM	
CANCEL	
RESIGNED	

Inferior receives	Inferior sends
CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE	
CONTRADICTION	
SUPERIOR_STATE	
	PREPARED
	CONFIRMED
	CANCELLED
	HAZARD
	RESIGN
	INFERIOR_STATE
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIORS_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

1988

1989 4.3.3 Enroller

1990 Causes the enrolment of an Inferior with a Superior. This Role is distinguished because in some
1991 implementations the enrolment request will be performed by the application, in some the
1992 application will ask the Actor that will play the Role of Inferior to enrol itself, and a Factory may
1993 enrol a new Inferior (which will also be Superior) as a result of receiving BEGIN&CONTEXT.

Enroller sends	Enroller receives
ENROL	ENROLLER

1994

1995 ENROLLED is received only if the Enroller asked for a response when the ENROL was sent.

1996 An ENROL message sent from an Enroller that did not require an ENROLLED response may be
1997 modified *en route* to the Superior by an intermediate Actor to ask for an ENROLLED response to
1998 be sent to the intermediate. (This may occur in the “one-shot” scenario, where an ENROL/no-rsp-
1999 req is received in relation to a CONTEXT_REPLY/related; the receiver of the CONTEXT_REPLY
2000 will need to ensure the enrolment is successful).

2001 4.3.4 Participant

2002 An Inferior which is specialized for the purposes of an application. Some Application Operations
2003 are associated directly with the Participant, which is responsible for determining whether a
2004 prepared condition is possible for them, and for applying the outcome (“associated directly” as
2005 opposed to involving another BTP Superior:Inferior relationship, in which this Actor is the
2006 Superior).

2007 The associated operations may be performed by the Actor that has the Role of Participant, or
2008 they may be performed by another Actor, and only the Confirm/Cancel application is performed
2009 by the Participant.

2010 In either case, the Participant, as part of becoming prepared (i.e. before it can send PREPARED
2011 to the Superior), will persist information allowing it apply a Confirm decision to the operations and
2012 to apply a Cancel decision. The nature of this information depends on the operations.

2013 *Note – Possible approaches include:*

- 2014 • *The operations may be performed completely and the Participant persists information*
2015 *to perform Counter-effect operations (compensating operations) to apply*
2016 *cancellation;*
- 2017 • *The operations may be just checked and not performed at all; the Participant persists*
2018 *information to perform them to apply confirmation;*

- 2019 • *The Participant persists the prior state of data affected by the operations and the*
2020 *operations are performed; the Participant restores the prior state to apply*
2021 *cancellation;*
- 2022 • *As the previous, but other access to the affected data is forbidden until the decision is*
2023 *known*
- 2024 • *The operations are performed completely, with the changes made accessible but*
2025 *marked as provisional; if confirmed, the provisional marking is removed; if cancelled,*
2026 *they are deleted or marked as cancelled.*
- 2027 Since a Participant is an Inferior, it sends and receives the messages for an Inferior.

2028 **4.3.5 Sub-coordinator**

2029 An Inferior which is also an Atomic Superior.

2030 A sub-coordinator is the Inferior in one Superior:Inferior relationship and the Superior in one or
2031 more Superior:Inferior relationships.

2032 From the perspective of its Superior (the one the sub-coordinator is Inferior to), there is no
2033 difference between a sub-coordinator and any other Inferior. From this perspective, the
2034 “associated operations” of the sub-coordinator as an Inferior include the relationships with its
2035 Inferiors.

2036 A sub-coordinator does not Become Prepared (and send PREPARED to its Superior) until and
2037 unless it has received PREPARED (or RESIGN) from all its Inferiors. The outcome is propagated
2038 to all Inferiors.

2039 Since a Sub-coordinator is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages
2040 for both.

2041 **4.3.6 Sub-composer**

2042 An Inferior which is also a Cohesive Superior.

2043 Like a sub-coordinator, a sub-composer cannot be distinguished from any other Inferior from the
2044 perspective of its Superior.

2045 A sub-composer is similar to a sub-coordinator, except that the constraints linking the different
2046 Inferiors concern only those Inferiors in the Confirm-set. How the Confirm-set is controlled, and
2047 when, is not defined in this specification.

2048 If the sub-composer is instructed to Cancel, by receiving a CANCEL message from its Superior,
2049 the cancellation is propagated to all its Inferiors.

2050 Since a Sub-composer is both an Inferior and a Superior, it sends and receives the messages for
2051 both.

2052 **4.4 Roles involved in the Control Relationships**

2053 **4.4.1 Decider**

2054 A Superior that is not also the Inferior on a Superior:Inferior relationship. It is the top BTP node in
2055 the Transaction Tree and receives requests from a Terminator as to the desired outcome for the
2056 Business Transaction. If the Terminator asks the Decider to Confirm the Business Transaction, it
2057 is the responsibility of the Decider to finally take the Confirm decision. The taking of the decision
2058 is synonymous with the persisting of information identifying the Inferiors that are to be confirmed.
2059 An Inferior cannot be confirmed unless PREPARED has been received from it.

2060 A Decider is instructed to Cancel by receiving CANCEL_TRANSACTION.

2061 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior (all Inferiors will have the same outcome) is a Coordinator. A
2062 Decider that is a Cohesive Superior (some Inferiors may Cancel, some Confirm) is a Composer.

Decider receives	Decider sends
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2063

2064 A Decider is also a Superior and thus sends and receives the messages for a Superior.

2065 4.4.2 Coordinator

2066 A Decider that is an Atomic Superior. The same outcome decision will be applied to all Inferiors
2067 (excluding any from which RESIGN is received).

2068 PREPARED must be received from all remaining Inferiors for a Confirm decision to be taken.

2069 A Coordinator must make a Cancel decision if

- 2070 • it is instructed to Cancel by the Terminator
- 2071 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior
- 2072 • if it is unable to persist a Confirm decision

2073 Since a Coordinator is a Decider, it receives the messages appropriate for a Decider and a
2074 Superior.

2075 4.4.3 Composer

2076 A Decider that is a Cohesive Superior. If the Terminator requests confirmation of the Cohesion,
2077 that request will determine the Confirm-set of the Cohesion.

2078 PREPARED must be received from all Inferiors in the Confirm-set (excluding any from which
2079 RESIGN is received) for a Confirm decision to be taken.

2080 A Composer must make a Cancel decision (applying to all Inferiors) if:

- 2081 • it is instructed to Cancel by the Terminator
- 2082 • if CANCELLED is received from any Inferior in the Confirm-set
- 2083 • if it is unable to persist a Confirm decision

2084 A Composer may be asked to prepare some or all of its Inferiors by receiving
2085 PREPARE_INFERIORS. It issues PREPARE to any of those Inferiors from which none of
2086 PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN have been received, and replies to the
2087 PREPARE_INFERIORS with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2088 A Composer may be asked to Cancel some of its Inferiors, but not itself, by receiving
2089 CANCEL_INFERIORS.

Composer receives	Composer sends
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2090 4.4.4 Terminator

2091 Asks a Decider to Confirm the Business Transaction, or instructs it to Cancel all or (for a
2092 Cohesion) part of the Business Transaction.

2093 All communications between Terminator and Decider are initiated by the Terminator. A
2094 Terminator is usually an Application Element.

2095 A request to Confirm is made by sending CONFIRM_TRANSACTION to the target Decider. If the
 2096 Decider is a Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may select which of the Composer's Inferiors
 2097 are to be included in the Confirm-set. If the Decider is an Atom Coordinator, all Inferiors are
 2098 included. After applying the decision, the Decider replies with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED,
 2099 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED or (in the case of problems) INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2100 A Terminator may ask a Composer (but not a Coordinator) to prepare some or all of its Inferiors
 2101 with PREPARE_INFERIORS. The Composer replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2102 A Terminator may send CANCEL_TRANSACTION to instruct the Decider to Cancel the whole
 2103 Business Transaction. The Decider replies with CANCEL_COMPLETE if all Inferiors Cancel
 2104 successfully, and with INFERIOR_STATUSES in the case of problems. If the Decider is a
 2105 Cohesion Composer, the Terminator may send CANCEL_INFERIORS to Cancel some of the
 2106 Inferiors; the Decider always replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

2107 A Terminator may check the status of the Inferiors of the Decider by sending
 2108 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES. The Decider replies with INFERIOR_STATUSES.

Terminator sends	Terminator receives
CONFIRM_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_TRANSACTION	TRANSACTION_CANCELLED INFERIOR_STATUSES
PREPARE_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
CANCEL_INFERIORS	INFERIOR_STATUSES
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2109 4.4.5 Initiator

2110 Requests a **Factory** to create a Superior – this will either be a Decider (representing a new top-
 2111 level Business Transaction) or a sub-coordinator or sub-composer to be the Inferior of an existing
 2112 Business Transaction.

Initiator sends	Initiator receives
BEGIN	BEGUN

2113

2114 The CONTEXT in the BEGUN is that for the new Superior.

2115 4.4.6 Factory

2116 Creates Superiors and returns the CONTEXT for the new Superior as a parameter of BEGUN.
 2117 The following types of Superior are created :

- 2118 • Decider, which is either
 - 2119 – Composer or
 - 2120 – Coordinator
- 2121 • Sub-composer
- 2122 • Sub-coordinator

2123

Factory receives	Factory sends
BEGIN	BEGUN

2124

2125 If the BEGIN has no contained CONTEXT, the Factory creates a Decider, either a Cohesion
 2126 Composer or an Atom Coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the
 2127 BEGIN.
 2128 If the BEGIN has a contained CONTEXT, the new Superior is also enrolled as an Inferior of the
 2129 Superior identified by the CONTEXT. The new Superior is thus a sub-composer or sub-
 2130 coordinator, as determined by the “superior type” parameter on the BEGIN.

2131 4.5 Other roles

2132 4.5.1 Redirector

2133 Sends a REDIRECT message to inform a Superior or Inferior that an address previously supplied
 2134 for the Peer (i.e. an Inferior or Superior, respectively) is no longer appropriate, and to supply a
 2135 new address or set of addresses to replace the old one.
 2136 A Redirector may send a REDIRECT message in response to receiving a message using the old
 2137 address, or may send REDIRECT at its own initiative.
 2138 If a Superior moves from the superior-address in its CONTEXT, or an Inferior moves from the
 2139 inferior-address in the ENROL message, the implementation **must** ensure that a Redirector
 2140 catches any inbound messages using the old address and replies with a REDIRECT message
 2141 giving the new address. (Note that the inbound message may itself be a REDIRECT message, in
 2142 which case the Redirector shall use the new address in the received message as the target for
 2143 the REDIRECT that it sends.)
 2144 After receiving a REDIRECT message, the BTP Actor **must** use the new address not the old one,
 2145 unless failure prevents it updating its information.

Redirector receives	Redirector sends
Any message for Superior or Inferior	REDIRECT

2146 4.5.2 Status Requestor

2147 Requests and receives the current status of a Transaction Tree Node – any of an Inferior,
 2148 Superior or Decider, or the current status of the nodes relationships with its Inferiors, if any. The
 2149 Role of Status Requestor has no responsibilities – it is just a name for where
 2150 REQUEST_STATUS and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES come from
 2151 (REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES is also issued by a Terminator to a Decider).

Status Requestor sends	Status Requestor receives
REQUEST_STATUS	STATUS
REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS	INFERIOR_STATUSES

2152
 2153 The receiver of the request can refuse to provide the status information by replying with
 2154 FAULT(StatusRefused). The information returned in STATUS will always relate to the
 2155 Transaction Tree Node as a whole (e.g. as an Inferior, even if it is also a Superior).

4.6 Summary of relationships

Figure 20 summarises the relationships between the BTP roles. BTP can be implemented using proprietary equivalents of the Terminator and Decider roles.

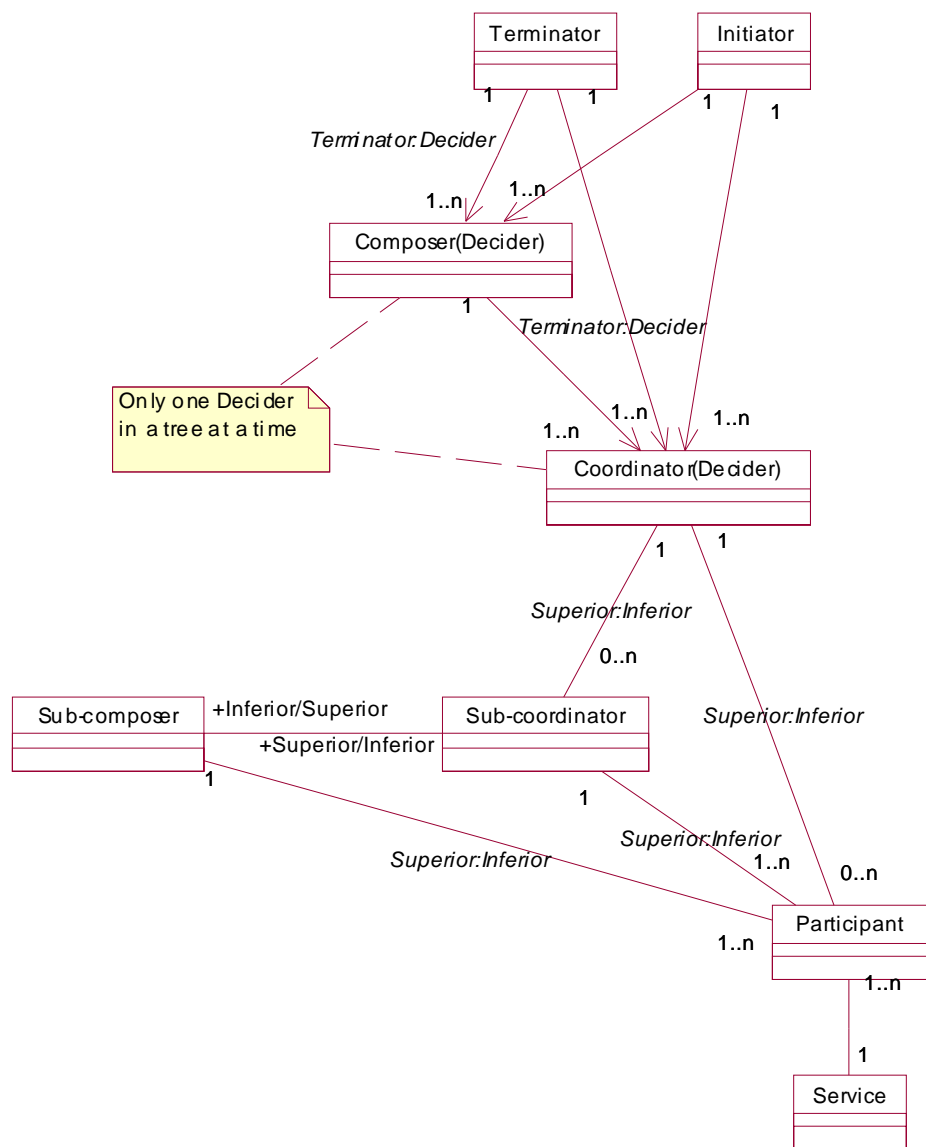


Figure 20 Summary of relationships between roles

5 Abstract Messages and Associated Contracts

BT Protocol Messages are defined in this section in terms of the abstract information that has to be communicated. These abstract messages will be mapped to concrete messages communicated by a particular Carrier Protocol (there can be several such mappings defined).

The abstract message set and the associated state table assume the Carrier Protocol will

- deliver messages completely and correctly, or not at all (corrupted messages will not be delivered);
- report some communication failures, but will not necessarily report all (i.e. not all message deliveries are positively acknowledged within the carrier);
- sometimes deliver successive messages in a different order than they were sent; and
- does not have built-in mechanisms to link a request and a response

Note -- these assumptions would be met by a mapping to SMTP and more than met by mappings to SOAP/HTTP.

However, when the abstract message set is mapped to a Carrier Protocol that provides a richer service (e.g. reports all delivery failures, guarantees ordered delivery or offers a request/response mechanism), the mapping can take advantage of these features. Typically in such cases, some of the parameters of an abstract message will be implicit in the carrier mechanisms, while the values of other parameters will be directly represented in transmitted elements.

The abstract messages include **Delivery Parameters** that are concerned with the transmission and delivery of the messages as well as **Payload Parameters** directly concerned with the progression of the BTP relationships. When bound to a particular Carrier Protocol and for particular implementation configurations, parts or all of the Delivery Parameters may be implicit in the Carrier Protocol and will not appear in the "on-the-wire" representation of the BTP messages as such. Delivery Parameters are defined as being only those parameters that are concerned with the transmission of this message, or of an immediate reply (thus address parameters to be used in repeated later messages and the identifiers of both sender and receiver are Payload Parameters). In the tables in this section, Delivery Parameters are shown in shaded cells.

5.1 Addresses

All of the messages except CONTEXT have a "target address" parameter and many also have other address parameters. These latter identify the desired target of other messages in the set. In all cases, the exact value will have been originally determined by the implementation that is the target or intended target.

The detailed format of the address will depend on the particular Carrier Protocol, but at this abstract level is considered to have three parts. The first part, the "binding name", identifies the binding to a particular Carrier Protocol – some bindings are specified in this document, others can be specified elsewhere. The second part of the address, the "binding address", is meaningful to the Carrier Protocol itself, which will use it for the communication (i.e. it will permit a message to be delivered to a receiver). The third part, "additional information", is not used or understood by the Carrier Protocol. The "additional information" may be a structured value.

When a message is actually transmitted, the "binding name" of the target address will identify which Carrier Protocol is in use and the "binding address" will identify the destination, as known to the Carrier Protocol. The entire binding address is considered to be "consumed" by the Carrier Protocol implementation. All of it may be used by the sending implementation, or some of it may be transmitted in headers, or as part of a URL in the Carrier Protocol, but then used or consumed by the receiving implementation of the Carrier Protocol to direct the BTP message to a BTP-aware entity (BTP-aware in that it is capable of interpreting the BTP messages). The "additional

information” of the target address will be part of the BTP message itself and used in some way by the receiving BTP-aware entity (it could be used to route the message on to some other BTP entity). Thus, for the target address, only the “additional information” field is transmitted in the BTP message and the “additional information” is opaque to parties other than the recipient.

For other addresses in BTP messages, all three components will be within the message.

All messages that concern a particular Superior:Inferior relationship have an identifier parameter for the target side as well as the target address. This allows full flexibility for implementation choices – an implementation can:

- a) Use the same binding address and additional information for multiple Business Transactions, using the identifier parameter to locate the relevant state information;
- b) Use the same binding address for multiple Business Transactions and use the additional information to locate the information; or
- c) Use a different binding address for each Business Transaction.

Which of these choices is used is opaque to the entity sending the message – both parts of the address and the identifier originated at the recipient of this message (and were transmitted as parameters of earlier messages in the opposite direction).

BTP recovery requires that the state information for a Superior or Inferior is accessible after failure and that the Peer can distinguish between temporary inaccessibility and the permanent non-existence of the state information. As is explained in “3.4.4 Redirection” in the conceptual model, BTP provides mechanisms – having a set of **BTP Addresses** for some parameters, and the REDIRECT message – that make this possible, even if the recovered state information is on a different address to the original one, as may be the case if case c) above is used.

2229 5.2 Request/response pairs

Many of the messages combine in pairs as a request and its response. However, in some cases the response message is sent without a triggering request, or as a possible response to more than one type of request. To allow for this, the abstract message set treats each message as standalone; but where a request does expect a reply, a “reply-address” parameter will be present. For any message with a reply address parameter, in the case of certain errors, a FAULT message will be sent to the reply address instead of the expected reply.

Between Superior and Inferior the address of the Peer is normally known (from the “superior-address” on an earlier CONTEXT or the “inferior-address” on a received ENROL). However, in some cases a message will be received for a Superior or Inferior that is not known – the state information no longer exists. This is not an exceptional condition but occurs when one side has either not created or has removed its persistent state in accordance with the procedures, but a message has got lost in a failure, and the Peer still has state information. The response to a message for an unknown (and logically non-existent) Superior is SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown, for an unknown Inferior it is INFERIOR_STATE/unknown. However, since the intended target is unknown, there is no information to locate the Peer, which sent the undeliverable message. To enable the receiver to reply with the appropriate *_STATE/unknown, all the messages between Superior and Inferior have a “senders-address” parameter. If a FAULT message is to be sent in response to message which (as an abstract message) has a “senders-address” parameter, the FAULT message is sent to that address.

Note – Both reply-address and senders-address may be absent when the Carrier Protocol itself has a request/response pattern. In these cases, the reply or sender address is implicitly that of the sender of the request (and thus the destination of a response)

2253 5.3 Compounding messages

BTP messages may be sent in combination with each other, or with other (application) messages. There are two cases:

2256 a) Sending the messages together where the combination has semantic significance. One
 2257 message is said to be “related to” the other – the combination is termed a “group”.

2258 b) Sending of the messages where the combination has no semantic significance, but is
 2259 merely a convenience or optimisation. This is termed “bundling” – the combination is
 2260 termed a “bundle”.

2261 The form A&B is used to refer to a combination (group) where message B is sent in relation to A
 2262 (“relation” is asymmetric). The form A+B is used to refer to A and B bundled together- the
 2263 transmission of the bundle "A+B" is semantically identical to the transmission of A followed by the
 2264 transmission of B.

2265 Only certain combinations of messages are possible in a group, and the meaning of the relation is
 2266 specifically defined for each such combination in the next section. A particular group is treated as
 2267 a unit for transmission – it has a single target address. This is usually that of one of the messages
 2268 in the group – the specification for the group defines which.

2269 A “bundle” of messages may contain both unrelated messages and groups of related messages.
 2270 The only constraint on which messages and groups can be bundled is that all have the same
 2271 binding address, but each may have different “additional information” values. (Messages within a
 2272 related group may have different addresses, where the rules of their relatedness permit this).
 2273 Unless constrained by the binding, any messages or groups that are to be sent to the same
 2274 binding address may be bundled – the fact that the binding addresses are the same is a
 2275 necessary and sufficient condition for the sender to determine that the messages can be bundled.

2276 A particular and important case of related messages is where a BTP CONTEXT message is sent
 2277 related to an Application Message. In this case, the target of the Application Message defines the
 2278 destination of the CONTEXT message. The receiving implementation may in fact remove the
 2279 CONTEXT before delivering the Application Message to the application (Service) proper, but from
 2280 the perspective of the sender, the two are sent to the same place.

2281 The compounding mechanisms, and the multi-part address structures, support the “one-wire” and
 2282 “one-shot” communication patterns.

2283 In “one-wire”, all message exchanges between two sides of a Superior:Inferior relationship,
 2284 including the associated Application Messages, pass via the same “endpoints”. These “endpoints”
 2285 may in fact be relays, routing messages on to particular Actors within their domain. The onward
 2286 routing will require some further addressing, but this has to be opaque to the sender. This can be
 2287 achieved if the relaying endpoint ensures that all addresses for Actors in its domain have the
 2288 relay’s address as their binding address, and any routing information it will need in its own
 2289 domain is placed in the additional information. (This may involve the relay changing addresses in
 2290 messages as they pass through it on the way out). On receiving a message, it determines the
 2291 within-domain destination from the received additional information (which is thus rewritten) and
 2292 forwards the message appropriately. The sender is unaware of this, and merely sees addresses
 2293 with the same binding address, which it is permitted to bundle. The content of the “additional
 2294 information” is a matter only for the relay – it could put an entire BTP Address in there, or other
 2295 implementation-defined information. Note that a quite different one-wire implementation can be
 2296 constructed where there is no relaying, but the receiving entity effectively performs all roles, using
 2297 the received identifiers to locate the appropriate state.

2298 “One-shot” communication makes it possible to send an Application Message, receive the
 2299 application reply, enrol an Inferior to be responsible for the Confirm/Cancel of the operations of
 2300 those message and inform the Superior that the Inferior is prepared, all in one two-way exchange
 2301 across the network (e.g. one request/reply of a Carrier Protocol).. The application request is sent
 2302 with a related CONTEXT message. The application response is sent with a relation group of
 2303 CONTEXT_REPLY/related, ENROL/no-rsp-req message and a PREPARED message. This is
 2304 possible even if the Superior address is different from the address of the Application Element that
 2305 sends the original message (if the application exchange is request/reply, there may not even be
 2306 an identifiable address for the Application Element). The target addresses of the ENROL and
 2307 PREPARED (the Superior address) are not transmitted; the Actor that was originally responsible

2308 for adding the CONTEXT to the outbound Application Message remembers the Superior address
 2309 and forwards the ENROL and PREPARED appropriately.

2310 With “one-shot”, if there are multiple Inferiors created as a result of a single Application Message,
 2311 there is an ENROL and PREPARED message for each sent related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. If
 2312 an operation fails, a CANCELLED message is sent instead of a PREPARED.

2313 If the CONTEXT has “superior-type” of “atom”, then subsequent messages to the same Service,
 2314 with the same related CONTEXT/atom, can have their associated operations put under the
 2315 control of the same Inferior, and only a CONTEXT_REPLY/completed is sent back with the
 2316 response (if the new operations fail, it will be necessary to send back
 2317 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated, or send CANCELLED). If the “superior type” on the CONTEXT is
 2318 “cohesive”, each operation will require separate enrolment.

2319 Whether the “one-shot” mechanism is used is determined by the implementation on the
 2320 responding (Inferior) side. This may be subject to configuration and may also be constrained by
 2321 the application or by the binding in use.

2322 5.4 Extensibility

2323 To simplify interoperation between implementations of this edition of BTP with implementations of
 2324 future editions, the “must-be-understood” sub-parameter as specified for Qualifiers may be
 2325 defined for use with any parameter added to an existing message in a future revision of this
 2326 specification. The default for “must-be-understood” shall be “true”, so an implementation receiving
 2327 an unrecognised parameter without a “false” value for “must-be-understood” shall not accept it
 2328 (the FAULT value “UnrecognisedParameter” is available, but other errors, including lower-layer
 2329 parsing/unmarshalling errors may be reported instead). If “must-be-understood” with the value
 2330 “false” is present as a sub-parameter of a parameter in any message, a receiving implementation
 2331 **should** ignore the parameter.

2332 How the sub-parameter is associated with the new parameter is determined by the particular
 2333 binding.

2334 No special mechanism is provided to allow for the introduction of completely new messages.

2335 5.5 Messages

2336 5.5.1 Qualifiers

2337 All messages have a Qualifiers parameter which contains zero or more Qualifier values. A
 2338 Qualifier has sub-parameters:

Sub-parameter	Type
qualifier name	string
qualifier group	URI
must-be-understood	Boolean
to-be-propagated	Boolean
content	Arbitrary – depends on type

2339

2340 **qualifier group**

2341 ensures the Qualifier name is unambiguous. Qualifiers in the same group need not have
 2342 any functional relationship. The qualifier group will typically be used to identify the
 2343 specification that defines the qualifier’s meaning and use. Qualifiers may be defined in
 2344 this or other standard specifications, in specifications of a particular community of users
 2345 or of implementations or by bilateral agreement.

2346 **qualifier name**
 2347 this identifies the meaning and use of the Qualifier, using a name that is unambiguous
 2348 within the scope of the Qualifier group.

2349 **must-be-understood**
 2350 if this has the value "true" and the receiving entity does not recognise the Qualifier type
 2351 (or does not implement the necessary functionality), a FAULT "UnsupportedQualifier"
 2352 shall be returned and the message shall not be processed. Default is "true".

2353 **to-be-propagated**
 2354 if this has the value "true" and the receiving entity passes the BTP message (which may
 2355 be a CONTEXT, but can be other messages) onwards to other entities, the same
 2356 Qualifier value shall be included. If the value is "false", the Qualifier shall not be
 2357 automatically included if the BTP message is passed onwards. (If the receiving entity
 2358 does support the qualifier type, it is possible a propagated message may contain another
 2359 instance of the same type, even with the same Content – this is not considered
 2360 propagation of the original qualifier.). Default is "false".

2361 **content**
 2362 the type (which may be structured) and meaning of the content is defined by the
 2363 specification of the Qualifier.

2364 5.6 Messages not restricted to outcome or Control 2365 Relationships.

2366 The messages in this section are used between various roles. CONTEXT message is used in the
 2367 Initiator:Factory relationship (when it is related to BEGIN or to BEGUN), and related to an
 2368 application 'message' to propagate the Business Transaction between parts of the
 2369 application. CONTEXT_REPLY is used as the reply to a CONTEXT.REQUEST_STATUS can be
 2370 issued to, and STATUS returned by any of Decider, Superior or Inferior. FAULT can be used on
 2371 any relationship to indicate an error condition back to the sender of a message.

2372 5.6.1 CONTEXT

2373 A CONTEXT is supplied by (or on behalf of) a Superior and related to one or more Application
 2374 Messages. (The means by which this relationship is represented is determined by the binding and
 2375 the binding mechanisms of the Application Protocol.) The "superior-type" parameter identifies
 2376 whether the Superior will apply the same decision to all Inferiors enrolled using the same superior
 2377 identifier ("superior-type" is "atom") or whether it may apply different decisions ("superior-type" is
 2378 "cohesion").

Parameter	Type
superior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
superior-identifier	Identifier
superior-type	cohesion/atom
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
reply-address	BTP Address

2379 **superior-address**
 2380 the address to which ENROL and other messages from an enrolled Inferior are to be
 2381 sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

2382 **superior-identifier**

2383 identifies the Superior. This shall be globally unambiguous.

2384 **superior-type**

2385 identifies whether the CONTEXT refers to a Cohesion or an Atom. Default is atom.

2386 **qualifiers**

2387 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier "Transaction timelimit" is carried

2388 by CONTEXT.

2389 **reply-address**

2390 the address to which a replying CONTEXT_REPLY is to be sent. This may be different

2391 each time the CONTEXT is transmitted – it refers to the destination of a replying

2392 CONTEXT_REPLY for this particular transmission of the CONTEXT. It shall be absent

2393 when CONTEXT is transmitted as a parameter of the BEGIN or BEGUN messages.

2394 There is no "target-address" parameter for CONTEXT as it is only transmitted in relation to the

2395 Application Messages or as a parameter of BEGIN and BEGUN.

2396 The forms CONTEXT/cohesion and CONTEXT/atom refer to CONTEXT messages with the

2397 "superior-type" with the appropriate value.

2398 5.6.2 CONTEXT_REPLY

2399 CONTEXT_REPLY is sent after receipt of CONTEXT (related to Application Message(s)) to

2400 indicate whether all necessary enrolments have already completed (ENROLLED has been

2401 received) or will be completed by ENROL messages sent in relation to the CONTEXT_REPLY or

2402 if an enrolment attempt has failed. CONTEXT_REPLY may be sent related to an Application

2403 Message (typically the response to the Application Message related to the CONTEXT). In some

2404 bindings the CONTEXT_REPLY may be implicit in the Application Message. CONTEXT_REPLY

2405 is used in some of the related groups to allow BTP messages to be sent to a Superior with an

2406 Application Message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
completion-status	completed/incomplete/related/repudiated
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2407

2408 **superior-identifier**

2409 the "superior-identifier" from the CONTEXT

2410 **inferior-identifier**

2411 the "inferior-identifier" of an Inferior that has been (or is being) enrolled with the Superior

2412 identified by the CONTEXT. This parameter is optional (it is used in the

2413 CONTEXT_REPLY&Application message related group)

2414 **completion-status:**

2415 reports whether all enrol operations made necessary by the receipt of the earlier

2416 CONTEXT message have completed. Values are

Value	meaning
<i>completed</i>	All enrolments (if any) have succeeded already

Value	meaning
<i>incomplete</i>	Further enrolments are possible (used only in related groups with other BTP messages)
<i>related</i>	At least some enrolments are to be performed by ENROL messages related to the CONTEXT_REPLY. All other enrolments (if any) have succeeded already.
<i>repudiated</i>	At least one enrolment has failed. The implications of receiving the CONTEXT have not been honoured.

2417 **qualifiers**

2418 standardised or other qualifiers.

2419 **target-address**

2420 the address to which the CONTEXT_REPLY is sent. This shall be the “reply-address”
2421 from the CONTEXT.

2422 The form CONTEXT_REPLY/completed, CONTEXT_REPLY/related and
2423 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated refer to CONTEXT_REPLY messages with status having the
2424 appropriate value. The form CONTEXT_REPLY/ok refers to either of
2425 CONTEXT_REPLY/completed or CONTEXT_REPLY/related.

2426 If there are no necessary enrolments (e.g. the Application Messages related to the received
2427 CONTEXT did not require the enrolment of any Inferiors), then CONTEXT_REPLY/completed is
2428 used.

2429 If a CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated is received, the receiving implementation **must** ensure that
2430 the Business Transaction will not be confirmed.

2431 **5.6.3 REQUEST_STATUS**

2432 Sent to an Inferior, Superior or to a Decider to ask it to reply with STATUS. The receiver may
2433 reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused).

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2434 **target-identifier**

2435 The identifier for the Business Transaction, or part of Business Transaction whose status
2436 is sought. If the target-address is a “decider-address”, this parameter shall be the
2437 “transaction-identifier” on the BEGUN message. If the “target-address” is an “inferior-
2438 address”, this parameter shall be the “inferior-identifier” on the ENROL message. If the
2439 “target-address” is a “superior-address”, this parameter shall be the “superior-identifier”
2440 on the CONTEXT.

2441 **qualifiers**

2442 standardised or other qualifiers.

2443 **target-address**

2444 the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. This can be any of
2445 “decider-address”, “inferior-address” or “superior-address”.

2446 **reply-address**

2447 the address to which the replying STATUS should be sent.

2448 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2449 **General**

2450 **Redirect**

2451 if the intended target now has a different address

2452 **StatusRefused**

2453 if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this message

2454 **5.6.4 STATUS**

2455 Sent by a Inferior, Superior or Decider in reply to a REQUEST_STATUS, reporting the overall
2456 state of the Transaction Tree Node represented by the sender.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status	See below
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2457 **responders-identifier**

2458 the identifier of the state, identical to the “target-identifier” on the REQUEST_STATUS.

2459 **status**

2460 states the current status of the Transaction Tree Node represented by the sender. Some
2461 of the values are only issued if the sender is an Inferior. If the Transaction Tree Node is
2462 both Superior and Inferior (i.e. is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer), and two status
2463 values would be valid for the current state, it is the sender’s option which one is used.

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Created</i>	Not applicable	The Inferior exists (and is addressable) but it has not been enrolled with a Superior
<i>Enrolling</i>	Not applicable	ENROL has been sent, but ENROLLED is awaited
<i>Active</i>	New enrolment of inferiors is possible	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>Resigning</i>	Not applicable	RESIGN has been sent; RESIGNED is awaited
<i>Resigned</i>	Not applicable	RESIGNED has been received
<i>Preparing</i>	Not applicable	PREPARE has been received; PREPARED has not been sent

status value	Meaning from Superior	Meaning from Inferior
<i>Prepared</i>	Not applicable	PREPARED has been sent; no outcome has been received or autonomous decision made
<i>Confirming</i>	Confirm decision has been made or CONFIRM has been received as Inferior but responses from inferiors are pending	CONFIRM has been received or an auto-confirm has been decided (CONFIRMED/auto may or may not have been sent); CONFIRMED/response has not been sent
<i>Confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/responses have been received from all Inferiors	CONFIRMED/response has been sent
<i>Cancelling</i>	Cancel decision has been made but responses from inferiors are pending	CANCEL has been received or auto-cancel has been decided
<i>Cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received from all Inferiors	CANCELLED has been sent
<i>Cancel-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous Cancel decision was made, CONFIRM received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Confirm-contradiction</i>	Not applicable	Autonomous confirm decision was made, CANCEL received; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Hazard</i>	A hazard has been reported from at least one Inferior	A hazard has been discovered; CONTRADICTION has not been received
<i>Contradicted</i>	Not applicable	CONTRADICTION has been received
<i>Unknown</i>	No state information for the target-identifier exists	No state information for the target-identifier exists
<i>Inaccessible</i>	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined	There may be state information for this target-identifier but it cannot be reached/existence cannot be determined

2464 **qualifiers**

2465 standardised or other qualifiers.

2466 **target-address**

2467 the address to which the STATUS is sent. This will be the "reply-address" on the
2468 REQUEST_STATUS message

2469 **5.6.5 FAULT**

2470 Sent in reply to various messages to report an error condition. The FAULT message is used on
2471 all the relationships as a general negative reply to a message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
fault-type	See below
fault-data	See below
fault-text	Text string
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2472 **superior-identifier**

2473 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and as used on the ENROL
2474 message (present only if the FAULT is sent to the superior).

2475 **inferior-identifier**

2476 the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message (present only if the FAULT is sent to
2477 the inferior)

2478 **fault-type**

2479 identifies the nature of the error, as specified for each of the main messages.

2480 **fault-data**

2481 information relevant to the particular error. Each “fault-type” defines the content of the
2482 “fault-data”:

fault-type	meaning	fault-data
<i>CommunicationFailure</i>	Any fault arising from the carrier mechanism and communication infrastructure.	Determined by the carrier mechanism and binding specification
<i>DuplicateInferior</i>	An inferior with the same address and identifier is already enrolled with this Superior	The identifier
<i>General</i>	Any otherwise unspecified problem	None
<i>InvalidDecider</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Terminator and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>InvalidInferior</i>	The "inferior-identifier" in the message or at least one "inferior-identifier"s in an "inferior-list" parameter is not known or does not identify a known Inferior	One or more invalid identifiers
<i>InvalidSuperior</i>	The received identifier is not known or does not identify a known Superior	The identifier
<i>StatusRefused</i>	The receiver will not report the requested status (or inferior statuses) to this StatusRequestor	None
<i>InvalidTerminator</i>	The address the message was sent to is not valid (at all or for this Decider and transaction identifier)	The address
<i>UnknownParameter</i>	A BTP message has been received with an unrecognised parameter	None
<i>UnknownTransaction</i>	The transaction-identifier is unknown	The transaction-identifier
<i>UnsupportedQualifier</i>	A qualifier has been received that is not recognised and on which "must-be-Understood" is "true".	Qualifier group and name
<i>WrongState</i>	The message has arrived when the recipient or the transaction identified by a related CONTEXT is in an invalid state.	None
<i>Redirect</i>	The target of the BTP message now has a different address	Set of BTP Addresses, to be used instead of the address the BTP message was received on

2483 **fault-text**

2484 Free text describing the fault or providing more information. Whether this parameter is
2485 present, and exactly what it contains are an implementation option.

2486 **qualifiers**

2487 standardised or other qualifiers.

2488 **target-address**

2489 the address to which the FAULT is sent. This may be the “reply-address” from a received
2490 message or the address of the opposite side (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT
2491 or ENROL message

2492 *Note – If the carrier mechanism used for the transmission of BTP messages is*
2493 *capable of delivering messages in a different order than they were sent in, the*
2494 *“WrongState” FAULT is not sent and should be ignored if received.*

2495 **5.6.6 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, INFERIOR_STATUSES**

2496 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES may be sent to and INFERIOR_STATUSES sent from any
2497 Decider, Superior or Inferior, asking it to report on the status of its relationships with Inferiors (if
2498 any). Since Deciders are required to respond to REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES with
2499 INFERIOR_STATUSES but non-Deciders may just issue FAULT(StatusRefused), and
2500 INFERIOR_STATUSES is also used as a reply to other messages from Terminator to Decider,
2501 these messages are described below under the messages used in the Control Relationships.

2502 **5.7 Messages used in the Outcome Relationships**

2503 **5.7.1 ENROL**

2504 A request to a Superior to ENROL an Inferior. This is typically issued after receipt of a CONTEXT
2505 message in relation to an application request.

2506 The Actor issuing ENROL plays the Role of Enroller.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	Identifier
response-requested	Boolean
inferior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2507 **superior-identifier.**

2508 The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2509 **response-requested**

2510 true if an ENROLLED response is required, false otherwise. Default is false.

2511 **inferior-address**

2512 the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and SUPERIOR_STATE
2513 messages for this Inferior are to be sent.

2514 **inferior-identifier**

2515 an identifier that identifies this Inferior. This shall be globally unambiguous..

2516 **qualifiers**

2517 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be present.

2518 **target-address**

2519 the address to which the ENROL is sent. This will be the “superior-address” from the
 2520 CONTEXT message.

2521 **reply-address**

2522 the address to which a replying ENROLLED is to be sent, if “response-requested” is true.
 2523 If this field is absent and “response-requested” is true, the ENROLLED should be sent to
 2524 the “inferior-address” (or one of them, at sender’s option)

2525 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2526 **General**

2527 **Redirect**

2528 if the Superior now has a different superior-address

2529 **DuplicateInferior**

2530 if inferior with at least one of the set “inferior-address” the same and the same “inferior-
 2531 identifier” is already enrolled

2532 **WrongState**

2533 if it is too late to enrol new Inferiors (generally if the Superior has already sent a
 2534 PREPARED message to its superior or terminator, or if it has already issued CONFIRM
 2535 to other Inferiors).

2536 The form ENROL/rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having the
 2537 value “true”; ENROL/no-rsp-req refers to an ENROL message with “response-requested” having
 2538 the value “false”

2539 ENROL/no-rsp-req is typically sent in relation to CONTEXT_REPLY/related. ENROL/rsp-req is
 2540 typically when CONTEXT_REPLY/completed will be used (after the ENROLLED message has
 2541 been received.)

2542 5.7.2 ENROLLED

2543 Sent from Superior in reply to an ENROL/rsp-req message, to indicate the Inferior has been
 2544 successfully enrolled (and will therefore be included in the termination exchanges)

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2545 **superior-identifier**

2546 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2547 **inferior-identifier**

2548 the “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2549 **qualifiers**

2550 standardised or other qualifiers.

2551 **target-address**

2552 the address to which the ENROLLED is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the
 2553 ENROL message (or one of the “inferior-address”es if the “reply-address” was empty)

2554 **sender-address**

2555 the address from which the ENROLLED is sent. This is an address of the Superior.
2556 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving ENROLLED.

2557 5.7.3 RESIGN

2558 Sent from an enrolled Inferior to the Superior to remove the Inferior from the enrolment. This can
2559 only be sent if the operations of the Business Transaction have had no effect as perceived by the
2560 Inferior.

2561 RESIGN may be sent at any time prior to the sending of a PREPARED or CANCELLED message
2562 (which cannot then be sent). RESIGN may be sent in response to a PREPARE message.

Parameter	type
superior-identifier	identifier
inferior-identifier	identifier
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2563 superior-identifier

2564 The "superior-identifier" as on the ENROL message

2565 inferior-identifier

2566 The "inferior-identifier" as on the earlier ENROL message

2567 response-requested

2568 is set to "true" if a RESIGNED response is required. Default is "false".

2569 qualifiers

2570 standardised or other qualifiers.

2571 target-address

2572 the address to which the RESIGN is sent. This will be the superior address as used on
2573 the ENROL message.

2574 sender-address

2575 the address from which the RESIGN is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2576 *Note -- RESIGN is equivalent to readonly vote in some other protocols, but can be*
2577 *issued early.*

2578 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "sender-address"):

2579 General

2580 InvalidInferior

2581 if no ENROL had been received for this "inferior-identifier"

2582 WrongState

2583 if a PREPARED or CANCELLED has already been received by the Superior from this
2584 Inferior

2585 The form RESIGN/rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with "response-requested" having the
2586 value "true"; RESIGN /no-rsp-req refers to an RESIGN message with "response-requested"
2587 having the value "false"

2588 **5.7.4 RESIGNED**

2589 Sent in reply to a RESIGN/rsp-req message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2590 **inferior-identifier**

2591 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2592 **qualifiers**

2593 standardised or other qualifiers.

2594 **target-address**

2595 the address to which the RESIGNED is sent. This will be the “inferior-address” from the
2596 ENROL message.

2597 **sender-address**

2598 the address from which the RESIGNED is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2599 After receiving this message the Inferior will not receive any more messages with this “inferior-
2600 identifier”.

2601 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2602 **General**

2603 **WrongState**

2604 if RESIGN has not been sent

2605 **5.7.5 PREPARE**

2606 Sent from Superior to an Inferior from whom ENROL but neither CANCELLED nor RESIGN have
2607 been received, requesting a PREPARED message. PREPARE can be sent after receiving a
2608 PREPARED message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2609 **superior-identifier**

2610 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2611 **inferior-identifier**

2612 the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2613 **qualifiers**

2614 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Minimum inferior timeout” is
 2615 carried by PREPARE.

2616 **target-address**
 2617 the address to which the PREPARE message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address”
 2618 from the ENROL message.

2619 **sender-address**
 2620 the address from which the PREPARE is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2621 On receiving PREPARE, an Inferior **should** reply with a PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN.
 2622 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2623 **General**
 2624 **WrongState**
 2625 if a CONFIRM or CANCEL has already been received by this Inferior.

2626 5.7.6 PREPARED

2627 Sent from Inferior to Superior, either unsolicited or in response to PREPARE, but only when the
 2628 Inferior has determined the operations associated with the Inferior can be confirmed and can be
 2629 cancelled, as may be instructed by the Superior. The level of isolation is a local matter (i.e. it is
 2630 the Inferiors choice, as constrained by the shared understanding of the application exchanges) –
 2631 other access may be blocked, may see applied results of operations or may see the original state.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
default-is cancel	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2632 **superior-identifier**
 2633 the “superior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2634 **inferior-identifier**
 2635 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2636 **default-is-cancel**
 2637 if “true”, the Inferior states that if the outcome at the Superior is to Cancel the operations
 2638 associated with this Inferior, no further messages need be sent to the Inferior. If the
 2639 Inferior does not receive a CONFIRM message, it will Cancel the associated operations.
 2640 The value “true” will invariably be used with a qualifier indicating under what
 2641 circumstances (usually a timeout) an autonomous decision to Cancel will be made. If
 2642 “false”, the Inferior will expect a CONFIRM or CANCEL message as appropriate, even if
 2643 qualifiers indicate that an autonomous decision will be made.

2644 **qualifiers**
 2645 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Inferior timeout” may be carried
 2646 by PREPARED.

2647 **target-address**

2648 the address to which the PREPARED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on the
2649 ENROL message.

2650 **sender-address**

2651 the address from which the PREPARED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2652 On sending a PREPARED, the Inferior undertakes to maintain its ability to Confirm or Cancel the
2653 effects of the associated operations until it receives a CONFIRM or CANCEL message. Qualifiers
2654 may define a time limit or other constraints on this promise. The “default-is cancel” parameter
2655 affects only the subsequent message exchanges and does not of itself state that cancellation will
2656 occur.

2657 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2658 **General**

2659 **InvalidInferior**

2660 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
2661 received from this Inferior

2662 The form PREPARED/cancel refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” = “true”.
2663 The unqualified form PREPARED refers to a PREPARED message with “default-is cancel” =
2664 “false”.

2665 **5.7.7 CONFIRM**

2666 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has been received.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2667 **superior-identifier**

2668 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2669 **inferior-identifier**

2670 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2671 **qualifiers**

2672 standardised or other qualifiers.

2673 **target-address**

2674 the address to which the CONFIRM message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address”
2675 from the ENROL message.

2676 **sender-address**

2677 the address from which the CONFIRM is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2678 On receiving CONFIRM, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to undo the
2679 operations associated with the Inferior. The effects of the operations can be made available to
2680 everyone (if they weren’t already).

2681 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2682 **General**

2683 **WrongState**
2684 if no PREPARED has been sent by, or if CANCEL has been received by this Inferior.

2685 5.7.8 CONFIRMED

2686 Sent after the Inferior has applied the confirmation, both in reply to CONFIRM or when the Inferior
2687 has made an autonomous Confirm decision, and in reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the
2688 Inferior decides to Confirm its associated operations.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
confirm-received	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2689 **superior-identifier**
2690 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2691 **inferior-identifier**
2692 the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2693 **confirm-received**
2694 “true” if CONFIRMED is sent after receiving a CONFIRM message; “false” if an
2695 autonomous Confirm decision has been made and either if no CONFIRM message has
2696 been received or the implementation cannot determine if CONFIRM has been received
2697 (due to loss of state information in a failure).

2698 **qualifiers**
2699 standardised or other qualifiers.

2700 **target-address**
2701 the address to which the CONFIRMED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on
2702 the CONTEXT message.

2703 **sender-address**
2704 the address from which the CONFIRMED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2705 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2706 General

2707 InvalidInferior

2708 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
2709 received from this Inferior.

2710 *Note – A CONFIRMED message arriving before a CONFIRM message is sent, or*
2711 *after a CANCEL has been sent, will occur when the Inferior has taken an*
2712 *autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The*
2713 *latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2714 The form CONFIRMED/auto refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “false”;
2715 CONFIRMED/response refers to a CONFIRMED message with “confirm-received” = “true”.

2716 **5.7.9 CANCEL**

2717 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior at any time before (and unless) CONFIRM has been sent.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2718 **superior-identifier**

2719 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2720 **inferior-identifier**

2721 the “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message.

2722 **qualifiers**

2723 standardised or other qualifiers.

2724 **target-address**

2725 the address to which the CANCEL message is sent. This will be the “inferior-address”
2726 from the ENROL message.

2727 **sender-address**

2728 the address from which the CANCEL is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2729 When received by an Inferior, the effects of any operations associated with the Inferior should be
2730 undone. If the Inferior had sent PREPARED, the Inferior is released from its promise to be able to
2731 Confirm the operations.

2732 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2733 **General**

2734 **WrongState**

2735 if a CONFIRM has been received by this Inferior.

2736 **5.7.10 CANCELLED**

2737 Sent when the Inferior has applied (or is applying) cancellation of the operations associated with
2738 the Inferior. CANCELLED is sent from Inferior to Superior in the following cases:

- 2739 • before (and instead of) sending PREPARED, to indicate the Inferior is unable to apply the
2740 operations in full and is cancelling all of them;
- 2741 • in reply to CANCEL, regardless of whether PREPARED has been sent;
- 2742 • after sending PREPARED and then making and applying an autonomous decision to Cancel;
- 2743 • in reply to CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior decides to Cancel the associated
2744 operations.

2745 As is specified in the state tables, cases 1, 2 and 3 are not always distinct in some circumstances
2746 of recovery and resending of messages.

Parameter	
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier

Parameter

qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2747 **superior-identifier**

2748 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message.

2749 **inferior-identifier**

2750 the inferior identifier as on the earlier ENROL message.

2751 **qualifiers**

2752 standardised or other qualifiers.

2753 **target-address**

2754 the address to which the CANCELLED is sent. This will be the Superior address as on
2755 the CONTEXT message.

2756 **sender-address**

2757 the address from which the CANCELLED is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2758 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2759 **General**2760 **InvalidInferior**

2761 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”, or if RESIGN has been
2762 received from this Inferior

2763 **WrongState**

2764 if CONFIRM has been sent

2765 *Note – A CANCELLED message arriving before a CANCEL message is sent, or*
2766 *after a CONFIRM has been sent, will occur when the Inferior has taken an*
2767 *autonomous decision and is not regarded as occurring in the wrong state. (The*
2768 *latter will cause a CONTRADICTION message to be sent.)*

2769 **5.7.11 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE**

2770 Sent from a Superior to an enrolled Inferior, when there is only one such enrolled Inferior. In this
2771 case the two-phase exchange is not performed between the Superior and Inferior and the
2772 outcome decision for the operations associated with the Inferior is determined by the Inferior.

Parameter**Type**

superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2773 **superior-identifier**

2774 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2775 **inferior-identifier**

2776 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2777 **qualifiers**
 2778 standardised or other qualifiers.

2779 **target-address**
 2780 the address to which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE message is sent This will be the
 2781 "inferior-address" on the ENROL message.

2782 **sender-address**
 2783 the address from which the CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE is sent. This is an address of the
 2784 Superior.

2785 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE can be issued by a Superior to an Inferior from whom PREPARED has
 2786 been received (subject to the requirement that there is only one enrolled Inferior).

2787 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "sender-address"):

2788 **General**

2789 5.7.12 HAZARD

2790 Sent when the Inferior has either discovered a "mixed" condition: that is unable to correctly and
 2791 consistently Cancel or Confirm the operations in accord with the decision , or when the Inferior is
 2792 unable to determine that a "mixed" condition has not occurred.

2793 HAZARD is also used to reply to a CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE if the Inferior determines there is a
 2794 mixed condition within its associated operations or is unable to determine that there is not a
 2795 mixed condition.

2796 *Note - If the Inferior makes its own autonomous decision, then it signals that*
 2797 *decision with CONFIRMED or CANCELLED and waits to receive a confirmatory*
 2798 *CONFIRM or CANCEL, or a CONTRADICTION if the autonomous decision by the*
 2799 *Inferior was the opposite of that made by the Superior.*

2800

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
level	mixed/possible
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2801 **superior-identifier**
 2802 The "superior-identifier" as on the ENROL message

2803 **inferior-identifier**
 2804 The "inferior-identifier" as on the earlier ENROL message

2805 **level**
 2806 indicates, with value "mixed" that a mixed condition has definitely occurred; or, with value
 2807 "possible" that it is unable to determine whether a mixed condition has occurred or not.

2808 **qualifiers**
 2809 standardised or other qualifiers.

2810 **target-address**

2811 the address to which the HAZARD is sent. This will be the superior address from the
2812 ENROL message.

2813 **sender-address**

2814 the address from which the HAZARD is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2815 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2816 **General**

2817 **InvalidInferior**

2818 if no ENROL has been received for this “inferior-identifier”

2819 The form HAZARD/mixed refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “mixed”, the form
2820 HAZARD/possible refers to a HAZARD message with “level” = “possible”.

2821 **5.7.13 CONTRADICTION**

2822 Sent by the Superior to an Inferior that has taken an autonomous decision contrary to the
2823 decision for the Atom. This is detected by the Superior when the ‘wrong’ one of CONFIRMED or
2824 CANCELLED is received. CONTRADICTION is also sent in response to a HAZARD message.

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2825 **superior-identifier**

2826 the “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message

2827 **inferior-identifier**

2828 The “inferior-identifier” as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2829 **qualifiers**

2830 standardised or other qualifiers.

2831 **target-address**

2832 the address to which the CONTRADICTION message is sent. This will be the “inferior-
2833 address” from the ENROL message.

2834 **sender-address**

2835 the address from which the CONTRADICTION is sent. This is an address of the Superior.

2836 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “sender-address”):

2837 **General**

2838 **5.7.14 SUPERIOR_STATE**

2839 Sent by a Superior as a query to an Inferior when

- 2840
- in the active state
 - there is uncertainty what state the Inferior has reached (due to recovery from previous failure or other reason).
- 2841
- 2842

2843 Also sent by the Superior to the Inferior in response to a received INFERIOR_STATE or other
 2844 message, in particular states. The <message>-received values can be used when a normal
 2845 message has been received and the Superior is waiting on some other event before it can
 2846 proceed with the protocol. This allows implementations to avoid excessive retransmissions of
 2847 messages. However, sending a SUPERIOR_STATE/*-received does not necessarily imply the
 2848 receipt of the previous message has been recorded persistently. (though this could be indicated
 2849 with a non-standard qualifier)

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

2850 **superior-identifier**

2851 the "superior-identifier" as on the CONTEXT message

2852 **inferior-identifier**

2853 The "inferior-identifier" as on the earlier ENROL message for this Inferior.

2854 **status**

2855 states the current state of the Superior, in terms of its relation to this Inferior only.

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Inferior is in the active state from the perspective of the Superior; ENROLLED has been sent, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received (as far as the Superior knows)
<i>prepared-received</i>	PREPARED has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>confirmed-received</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received from the Inferior, but no outcome is yet available
<i>cancelled-received</i>	CANCELLED has been received from the Inferior (as a result of an autonomous decision), but no outcome is yet available
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the Superior, or for its relationship with this Inferior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not

status value

Meaning

exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can treat this as an instruction to Cancel any associated operations

2856 response-requested

2857 true, if SUPERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior's initiative; false, if
2858 SUPERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received INFERIOR_STATE or other message.
2859 Can only be true if status is active or prepared-received. Default is "false"

2860 qualifiers

2861 standardised or other qualifiers.

2862 target-address

2863 the address to which the SUPERIOR_STATE message is sent. This will be the "inferior-
2864 address" from the ENROL message.

2865 sender-address

2866 the address from which the SUPERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an address of the
2867 Superior.

2868 The Inferior, on receiving SUPERIOR_STATE with "response-requested = true, should reply in a
2869 timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending
2870 INFERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2871 A status of unknown shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Superior has
2872 no knowledge of the Inferior, or (equivalently) it can be determined that the relationship with the
2873 Inferior was cancelled. If there could be persistent information corresponding to the Superior, but
2874 it is not accessible from the entity receiving an INFERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message
2875 targeted to the Superior or that entity cannot determine whether any such persistent information
2876 exists or not, the response shall be Inaccessible.

2877 SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
2878 INFERIOR_STATE/*y, that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is
2879 no state information for it).

2880 The form SUPERIOR_STATE/some-status-value refers to a SUPERIOR_STATE message with
2881 the specified status value and with "response-requested" = "false". SUPERIOR_STATE/some-
2882 status-value/y refers to a similar message, but with "response-requested" = "true". The form
2883 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a SUPERIOR_STATE message with "response-requested" =
2884 "true" and any value for status.

2885 5.7.15 INFERIOR_STATE

2886 Sent by an Inferior as a query when in the active state to a Superior, when (due recovery from
2887 previous failure or other reason) there is uncertainty what state the Superior has reached.

2888 Also sent by the Inferior to the Superior in response to a received SUPERIOR_STATE or other
2889 messages, in particular states. The <message>-received values can be used when a normal
2890 message has been received and the Inferior is waiting on some other event before it can give a
2891 definite reply. This allows implementations to avoid excessive retransmissions of messages.
2892 However, sending a SUPERIOR_STATE/*-received does not necessarily imply the receipt of the
2893 previous message has been recorded persistently. (though this could be indicated with a non-
2894 standard qualifier)

2895

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
status	<i>see below</i>
response-requested	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
sender-address	BTP Address

- 2896 **superior-identifier**
- 2897 The “superior-identifier” as used on the ENROL message
- 2898 **inferior-identifier**
- 2899 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message
- 2900 **status**
- 2901 states the current state of the Inferior, which corresponds to the last message sent to the
- 2902 Superior by (or in the case of ENROL for) the Inferior

status value	meaning/previous message sent
<i>active</i>	The relationship with the Superior is in the active state from the perspective of the Inferior; ENROL has been sent, a decision to send PREPARED has not been made.
<i>prepare-received</i>	PREPARE has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGN.
<i>confirm-received</i>	CONFIRM has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD.
<i>cancel-received</i>	CANCEL has been received from the Superior, but the Inferior is not yet able to reply with CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD.
<i>inaccessible</i>	The state information for the relationship with the Superior, if it exists, cannot be accessed at the moment. This should be a transient condition
<i>unknown</i>	The Inferior is not known – it does not exist from the perspective of the Superior. The Inferior can be treated as cancelled

- 2903 **response-requested**

2904 “true” if INFERIOR_STATE is sent as a query at the Superior’s initiative; “false” if
 2905 INFERIOR_STATE is sent in reply to a received SUPERIOR_STATE or other message.
 2906 Can only be “true” if “status” is “active” or “prepared-received”. Default is “false”

2907 **qualifiers**

2908 standardised or other qualifiers.

2909 **target-address**

2910 the address to which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This will be the “target-address” as
 2911 used the original ENROL message.

2912 **sender-address**

2913 the address from which the INFERIOR_STATE is sent. This is an address of the Inferior.

2914 The Superior, on receiving INFERIOR_STATE with “response-requested” = “true”, should reply in
 2915 a timely manner by (depending on its state) repeating the previous message it sent or by sending
 2916 SUPERIOR_STATE with the appropriate status value.

2917 A status of “unknown” shall only be sent if it has been determined for certain that the Inferior has
 2918 no knowledge of a relationship with the Superior. If there could be persistent information
 2919 corresponding to the Superior, but it is not accessible from the entity receiving an
 2920 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y (or other) message targetted on the Inferior or the entity cannot
 2921 determine whether any such persistent information exists, the response shall be “inaccessible”.

2922 INFERIOR_STATE/unknown is also used as a response to messages, other than
 2923 SUPERIOR_STATE/*y, that are received when the Inferior is not known (and it is known there is
 2924 no state information for it).

2925 A SUPERIOR_STATE/INFERIOR_STATE exchange that determines that one or both sides are
 2926 in the active state does not require that the Inferior be cancelled (unlike some other two-phase
 2927 commit protocols). The relationship between Superior and Inferior, and related Application
 2928 Elements may be continued, with new Application Messages carrying the same CONTEXT.
 2929 Similarly, if the Inferior is prepared but the Superior is active, there is no required impact on the
 2930 progression of the relationship between them.

2931 The form INFERIOR_STATE/some-status-value refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message with the
 2932 specified status value and with “response-requested” = “false”. INFERIOR_STATE/some-status-
 2933 value/y refers to a similar message, but with “response-requested” = “true”. The form
 2934 INFERIOR_STATE/*y refers to a INFERIOR_STATE message with “response-requested” =
 2935 “true” and any value for status.

2936 **5.7.16 REDIRECT**

2937 Sent when the address previously given for a Superior or Inferior is no longer valid and the
 2938 relevant state information is now accessible with a different address (but the same superior or
 2939 “inferior-identifier”).

Parameter	Type
superior-identifier	Identifier
inferior-identifier	Identifier
old-address	Set of BTP Addresses
new-address	Set of BTP Addresses
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

2940 **superior-identifier**

2941 The “superior-identifier” as on the CONTEXT message and used on an ENROL
 2942 message. (present only if the REDIRECT is sent from the Inferior).

2943 **inferior-identifier**

2944 The “inferior-identifier” as on the ENROL message

2945 **old-address**

2946 The previous address of the sender of REDIRECT. A match is considered to apply if any
 2947 of the “old-address” values match one that is already known.

2948 **new-address**

2949 The (set of alternatives) “new-address” values to be used for messages sent to this entity.

2950 **qualifiers**

2951 standardised or other qualifiers.

2952 **target-address**

2953 the address to which the REDIRECT is sent. This is the address of the opposite side
 2954 (superior/inferior) as given in a CONTEXT or ENROL message

2955 If the Actor whose address is changed is an Inferior, the “new-address” value replaces the
 2956 “inferior-address” as present in the ENROL.

2957 If the Actor whose address is changed is a Superior, the “new-address” value replaces the
 2958 Superior address as present in the CONTEXT message (or as present in any other mechanism
 2959 used to establish the Superior:Inferior relationship).

2960 5.8 Messages used in Control Relationships

2961 5.8.1 BEGIN

2962 A request to a Factory to create a new Business Transaction. This may either be a new top-level
 2963 transaction, in which case the Composer or Coordinator will be the Decider, or the new Business
 2964 Transaction may be immediately made the Inferior within an existing Business Transaction (thus
 2965 creating a sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator).

Parameter	Type
transaction-type	cohesion/atom
context	CONTEXT message
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

2966 **transaction-type**

2967 identifies whether a new Cohesion or new Atom is to be created; this value will be the
 2968 “superior-type” in the new CONTEXT

2969 **qualifiers**

2970 standardised or other qualifiers. The standard qualifier “Transaction timelimit” may be
 2971 present on BEGIN, to set the timelimit for the new Business Transaction and will be
 2972 copied to the new CONTEXT. The standard qualifier “Inferior name” may be present if
 2973 there is a CONTEXT related to the BEGIN.

2974 **context**

2975 the CONTEXT of an existing Business Transaction. This parameter is present only if a
 2976 sub-Composer or sub-Coordinator is being created. If present, the “reply-address”
 2977 parameter of the CONTEXT shall be absent.

2978 **target-address**

2979 the address of the entity to which the BEGIN is sent. How this address is acquired and
 2980 the nature of the entity are outside the scope of this specification.

2981 **reply-address**

2982 the address to which the replying BEGUN and related CONTEXT message should be
 2983 sent.

2984 A new top-level Business Transaction is created if there is no context parameter. A Business
 2985 Transaction that is to be Inferior in an existing Business Transaction is created if the context
 2986 parameter is present. In this case, the Factory is responsible for enrolling the new Composer or
 2987 Coordinator as an Inferior of the Superior identified in that CONTEXT.

2988 *Note – This specification does not provide a standardised means to determine*
 2989 *which of the Inferiors of a sub-Composer are in its Confirm set. This is considered*
 2990 *part of the application:inferior relationship.*

2991 The forms BEGIN/cohesion and BEGIN/atom refer to BEGIN with “transaction-type” having the
 2992 corresponding value.

2993 Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):

2994 **General**

2995 **Redirect**

2996 if the Factory now has a different address

2997 **WrongState**

2998 only issued if the context field is present and the Superior identified by that CONTEXT is
 2999 in the wrong state to enrol new Inferiors

3000 **5.8.2 BEGUN**

3001 BEGUN is a reply to BEGIN. There is always a contained CONTEXT, which is the CONTEXT for
 3002 the new Business Transaction.

Parameter	Type
decider-address	Set of BTP Addresses
inferior-address	Set of BTP Addresses
transaction-identifier	Identifier
context	CONTEXT message
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3003 **decider-address**

3004 for a top-most transaction (no context parameter on the BEGIN), this is the address to
 3005 which PREPARE_INFERIORS, CONFIRM_TRANSACTION, CANCEL_TRANSACTION,
 3006 CANCEL_INFERIORS and REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES messages are to be
 3007 sent; if a context parameter was present on the BEGIN this parameter is absent

3008 **inferior-address**

3009 for a non-top-most transaction (a context parameter was present on the BEGIN), this is
 3010 the “inferior-address” used in the enrolment of this Business Transaction with the

3011 Superior identified by the context parameter on the BEGIN. The parameter is optional
 3012 (implementor's choice) if this is not a top-most transaction; it shall be absent if this is a
 3013 top-most transaction.

3014 **transaction-identifier**

3015 if this is a top-most transaction, this is an globally-unambiguous identifier for the new
 3016 Decider (Composer or Coordinator). If this is not a top-most transaction, the transaction-
 3017 identifier shall be the inferior-identifier used in the enrolment of this Business Transaction
 3018 with the Superior identified by the context parameter of the BEGIN.

3019 *Note – The “transaction-identifier” may be identical to the “superior-identifier” in the*
 3020 *CONTEXT message in the context parameter of this BEGIN.*

3021 **context**

3022 the context for the new Business Transaction, ready to be propagated by application
 3023 means or used for enrolment.

3024 **qualifiers**

3025 standardised or other qualifiers.

3026 **target-address**

3027 the address to which the BEGUN is sent. This will be the “reply-address” from the BEGIN.

3028 At implementation option, the “decider-address” and/or “inferior-address” and the “superior-
 3029 address” in the CONTEXT message in the context parameter may be the same or may be
 3030 different. There is no general requirement that they even use the same bindings. Any may also be
 3031 the same as the “target-address” of the BEGIN message (the identifier on messages will ensure
 3032 they are applied to the appropriate Composer or Coordinator).

3033 No FAULT messages are issued on receiving BEGUN.

3034 5.8.3 PREPARE_INFERIORS

3035 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider, but only if it is a Cohesion Composer, to tell it to prepare all
 3036 or some of its inferiors, by sending PREPARE to any that have not already sent PREPARED,
 3037 RESIGN or CANCELLED to the Decider (Composer) on its relationships as Superior. If the
 3038 inferiors-list parameter is absent, the request applies to all the inferiors; if the parameter is
 3039 present, it applies only to the identified inferiors of the Decider (Composer).

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

3040 **transaction-identifier**

3041 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.

3042 **inferiors-list**

3043 defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider preparation is requested for, using the
 3044 “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its Role as Superior). If
 3045 this parameter is absent, the PREPARE applies to all Inferiors.

3046 **qualifiers**
 3047 standardised or other qualifiers.
 3048 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**
 3049 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
 3050 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
 3051 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:

3052

Field	Type
inferior-identifier-list	A list of one or more Inferior-identifiers (each of which shall be one of those in the inferiors-list parameter), identifying which inferiors this item refers to.
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the PREPARE messages.

3053 For each Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list, the qualifiers are
 3054 included in the PREPARE message sent to that Inferior.

3055 NOTE – If an Inferior has spontaneously cancelled, prepared or resigned, the qualifiers
 3056 will not be sent.

3057 **target-address**

3058 the address to which the PREPARE_INFERIORS message is sent. This will be the
 3059 decider-address from the BEGUN message.

3060 **reply-address**

3061 the address of the Terminator sending the PREPARE_INFERIORS message.

3062 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter (all Inferiors if the parameter is absent),
 3063 from which none of PREPARED, CANCELLED or RESIGNED has been received, the Decider
 3064 shall issue PREPARE. It will reply to the Terminator, using the “reply-address” on the
 3065 PREPARE_INFERIORS message, sending an INFERIOR_STATUSES message giving the
 3066 status of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list parameter (all of them if the parameter was
 3067 absent).

3068 If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the “inferior-list” is unknown (does not correspond to
 3069 an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation option
 3070 whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the “inferiors-list”.

3071 Types of FAULT possible (sent to Superior address):

3072 **General**

3073 **InvalidDecider**

3074 if Decider address is unknown

3075 **Redirect**

3076 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

3077 **UnknownTransaction**

3078 if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3079 **InvalidInferior**

3080 if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

3081 **WrongState**
 3082 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has already been received
 3083 by this Composer.
 3084 The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/all refers to a PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the
 3085 “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form PREPARE_INFERIORS/specific refers to a
 3086 PREPARE_INFERIORS message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

3087 5.8.4 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION

3088 Sent from a Terminator to a Decider to request confirmation of the Business Transaction. If the
 3089 Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the Confirm-set is specified by the “inferiors-list” parameter.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

3090 **transaction-identifier**
 3091 identifies the Decider. This will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.
 3092 **inferiors-list**
 3093 defines which Inferiors enrolled with the Decider, if it is a Cohesion Composer, are to be
 3094 confirmed, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its
 3095 Role as Superior). Shall be absent if the Decider is an Atom Coordinator.
 3096 **report-hazard**
 3097 Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
 3098 contradictory decisions within the Business Transaction. If “report-hazard” is “true”, the
 3099 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been
 3100 received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If “report-
 3101 hazard” is “false”, the Decider will reply with TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED or
 3102 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED as soon as the decision for the transaction is known.
 3103 **qualifiers**
 3104 standardised or other qualifiers.
 3105 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**
 3106 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
 3107 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
 3108 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:

Field	Type
inferior-identifier-list	A list of one or more Inferior-identifiers, identifying which inferiors this item refers to.

	Field	Type
	qualifiers	A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the CONFIRM messages, if one is sent to the inferior.
3109 3110 3111	If a CONFIRM decision is made, and an Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list is in the confirm-set, the qualifiers are included in the CONFIRM message sent to that Inferior.	
3112 3113 3114	NOTE – If qualifiers are required to be sent on a PREPARE (or for Inferiors not in the confirm-set, CANCEL), the PREPARE_INFERIORS (or CANCEL_INFERIORS) messages and their targeted-qualifiers-list parameter should be used.	
3115	target-address	
3116 3117	the address to which the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the “decider-address” on the BEGUN message.	
3118	reply-address	
3119	the address of the Terminator sending the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message.	
3120 3121 3122 3123	If the “inferiors-list” parameter is present, the Inferiors identified shall be the “Confirm-set” of the Cohesion. If the parameter is absent and the Business Transaction is a Cohesion, the “Confirm-set” shall be all remaining Inferiors. If the Business Transaction is an Atom, the “Confirm-set” is automatically all the Inferiors.	
3124	Any Inferiors from which RESIGN is received are not counted in the Confirm-set.	
3125 3126	If, for each of the Inferiors in the Confirm-set, PREPARE has not been sent and PREPARED has not been received, PREPARE shall be issued to that Inferior.	
3127 3128 3129 3130	<i>NOTE -- If PREPARE has been sent but PREPARED not yet received from an Inferior in the Confirm-set, it is an implementation option whether and when to re-send PREPARE. The Superior implementation may choose to re-send PREPARE if there are indications that the earlier PREPARE was not delivered.</i>	
3131 3132 3133 3134	A Confirm decision may be made only if PREPARED has been received from all Inferiors in the “Confirm-set”. The making of the decision shall be persistent (and if it is not possible to persist the decision, it is not made). If there is only one remaining Inferior in the “Confirm set” and PREPARE has not been sent to it, CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE may be sent to it.	
3135	All remaining Inferiors that are not in the Confirm set shall be cancelled.	
3136 3137	If a Confirm decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.	
3138 3139	If a Cancel decision is made and “report-hazard” was “false”, a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the “reply-address”.	
3140 3141 3142	If “report-hazard” was “true”, TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED shall be sent to the “reply-address” after CONFIRMED has been received from each Inferior in the Confirm-set and CANCELLED or RESIGN from each and any Inferior not in the Confirm-set.	
3143 3144 3145 3146	If “report-hazard” was “true” and any HAZARD or contradictory message was received (i.e. CANCELLED from an Inferior in the Confirm-set or CONFIRMED from an Inferior not in the Confirm-set), an INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the “reply-address”.	
3147 3148 3149	If one or more of the “inferior-identifier”s in the “inferior-list” is unknown (does not correspond to an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. The Decider shall not make a Confirm decision and shall not send CONFIRM to any Inferior.	
3150	Types of FAULT possible (sent to “reply-address”):	

3151 **General**

3152 **InvalidDecider**

3153 if Decider address is unknown

3154 **Redirect**

3155 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”

3156 **UnknownTransaction**

3157 if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3158 **InvalidInferior**

3159 if one or more “inferior -identifiers” in the inferiors-list is unknown

3160 **WrongState**

3161 if a CANCEL_TRANSACTION has already been received .

3162 The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/all refers to a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message where

3163 the “inferiors-list” parameter is absent. The form CONFIRM_TRANSACTION/specific refers to a

3164 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message where the “inferiors-list” parameter is present.

3165 5.8.5 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED

3166 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED to a Terminator in reply to

3167 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if all of the Confirm-set confirms (and, for a Cohesion, all other

3168 Inferiors Cancel) without reporting hazards, or if the Decider made a Confirm decision and the

3169 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION had a “report-hazards” value of “false”.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3170 **transaction-identifier**

3171 the “transaction-identifier” as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as

3172 a whole).

3173 **qualifiers**

3174 standardised or other qualifiers.

3175 **target-address**

3176 the address to which the TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED is sent., this will be the “reply-

3177 address” from the CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message

3178 5.8.6 CANCEL_TRANSACTION

3179 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider at any time before CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
report-hazard	Boolean
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
targetted-qualifiers-list	List of Targetted-qualifiers-items (see below)

Parameter	Type
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

3180 **transaction-identifier**

3181 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.

3182 **report-hazard**

3183 Defines whether the Terminator wishes to be informed of hazard events and
3184 contradictory decisions within the Business Transaction. If "report-hazard" is "true", the
3185 receiver will wait until responses (CONFIRMED, CANCELLED or HAZARD) have been
3186 received from all of its inferiors, ensuring that any hazard events are reported. If "report-
3187 hazard" is "false", the Decider will reply with TRANSACTION_CANCELLED immediately.

3188 **qualifiers**

3189 standardised or other qualifiers.

3190 **targetted-qualifiers-list:**

3191 contains a number of Targetted-qualifiers-items identifying one or more Inferiors and
3192 containing one or more qualifiers that are to be sent to each of those inferior if it is
3193 confirmed. The fields of an Targetted-qualifiers-item are:

Field	Type
inferior-identifier-list	A list of one or more Inferior- identifiers (each of which shall be one of those in the inferiors-list parameter), identifying which inferiors this item refers to.
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers to be sent to the identified inferiors on the CANCEL messages.

3194 For each Inferior whose inferior-identifier is in the inferior-identifier-list, the qualifiers are
3195 included in the CANCEL message sent to that Inferior.

3196 NOTE – If an Inferior has spontaneously cancelled, prepared or resigned, the qualifiers
3197 will not be sent.

3198 **target-address**

3199 the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the
3200 decider-address from the BEGUN message.

3201 **reply-address**

3202 the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message.

3203 The Business Transaction is cancelled – this is propagated to any remaining Inferiors by issuing
3204 CANCEL to them. No more Inferiors will be permitted to enrol.

3205 If "report-hazard" was "false", a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED message shall be sent to the
3206 "reply-address".

3207 If "report-hazard" was "true" and any HAZARD or CONFIRMED message was received, an
3208 INFERIOR_STATUSES reporting the status for all Inferiors shall be sent to the "reply-address".

3209 If "report-hazard" was "true", TRANSACTION_CANCELLED shall be sent to the "reply-address"
3210 after CANCELLED or RESIGN has been received from each Inferior.

3211 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "reply-address"):

- 3212 **General**
- 3213 **InvalidDecider**
- 3214 if Decider address is unknown
- 3215 **Redirect**
- 3216 if the Decider now has a different “decider-address”
- 3217 **UnknownTransaction**
- 3218 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 3219 **WrongState**
- 3220 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION has been received by this Composer.

3221 5.8.7 CANCEL_INFERIORS

3222 Sent by a Terminator to a Decider, but only if is a Cohesion Composer, at any time before
3223 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been sent.

Parameter	Type
transaction-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

- 3224 **transaction-identifier**
- 3225 identifies the Decider and will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message.
- 3226 **inferiors-list**
- 3227 defines which of the Inferiors of this Decider are to be cancelled, using the “inferior-
3228 identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the Decider (in its Role as Superior).
- 3229 **qualifiers**
- 3230 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3231 **target-address**
- 3232 the address to which the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message is sent. This will be the
3233 decider-address from the BEGUN message.
- 3234 **reply-address**
- 3235 the address of the Terminator sending the CANCEL_TRANSACTION message.
- 3236 For all Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list parameter, from which neither CANCELLED or
3237 RESIGNED has been received, the Decider shall issue CANCEL. It will reply to the Terminator,
3238 using the “reply-address” on the CANCEL_INFERIORS message, sending an
3239 INFERIOR_STATUSES message giving the status of the Inferiors identified on the inferiors-list
3240 parameter.
- 3241 Only the Inferiors identified in the inferiors-list are to be cancelled. Any other inferiors are
3242 unaffected by a CANCEL_INFERIORS. Further Inferiors may be enrolled.
- 3243 *Note – A CANCEL_INFERIORS for all of the currently enrolled Inferiors will leave*
3244 *the Cohesion ‘empty’, but permitted to continue with new Inferiors, if any enrol.*

3245 If one or more of the "inferior-identifier"s in the "inferior-list" is unknown (does not correspond to
 3246 an enrolled Inferior), a FAULT/Invalid-inferior shall be returned. It is an implementation option
 3247 whether CANCEL is sent to any of the Inferiors that are validly identified in the "inferiors-list".
 3248 Types of FAULT possible (sent to "reply-address"):

3249 **General**

3250 **InvalidDecider**

3251 if Decider address is unknown

3252 **Redirect**

3253 if the Decider now has a different "decider-address"

3254 **UnknownTransaction**

3255 if the transaction-identifier is unknown

3256 **InvalidInferior**

3257 if one or more inferior-identifiers on the inferiors-list is unknown

3258 **WrongState**

3259 if a CONFIRM_TRANSACTION or CANCEL_TRANSACTION has been received by this
 3260 Composer.

3261 5.8.8 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED

3262 A Decider sends TRANSACTION_CANCELLED to a Terminator in reply to
 3263 CANCEL_TRANSACTION or in reply to CONFIRM_TRANSACTION if the Decider decided to
 3264 Cancel. In both cases, TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is used only if all Inferiors cancelled
 3265 without reporting hazards or the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION had a
 3266 "report-hazard" value of "false".

Parameter

transaction-identifier	identifier
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3267 **transaction-identifier**

3268 the "transaction-identifier" as on the BEGUN message (i.e. the identifier of the Decider as
 3269 a whole).

3270 **qualifiers**

3271 standardised or other qualifiers.

3272 **target-address**

3273 the address to which the TRANSACTION_CANCELLED is sent. This will be the "reply-
 3274 address" from the CANCEL_TRANSACTION or CONFIRM_TRANSACTION message.

3275 5.8.9 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES

3276 Sent to a Decider to ask it to report the status of its Inferiors with an INFERIOR_STATUSES
 3277 message. It can also be sent to any Actor with a "superior-address" or "inferior-address", asking it
 3278 about the status of that Transaction Tree Nodes Inferiors, if there are any. In this latter case, the
 3279 receiver may reject the request with a FAULT(StatusRefused). If it is prepared to reply, but has
 3280 no Inferiors, it replies with an INFERIOR_STATUSES with an empty "status-list" parameter.

Parameter	Type
target-identifier	Identifier
inferiors-list	List of Identifiers
qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address
reply-address	BTP Address

- 3281 **target-identifier**
- 3282 identifies the transaction (or Transaction Tree Node). When the message is used to a
3283 Decider, this will be the transaction-identifier from the BEGUN message. Otherwise it will
3284 be the superior-identifier from a CONTEXT or an inferior-identifier from an ENROL
3285 message.
- 3286 **inferiors-list**
- 3287 defines which inferiors enrolled with the target are to be included in the
3288 INFERIOR_STATUSES, using the “inferior-identifiers” as on the ENROL received by the
3289 Decider (in its Role as Superior). If the list is absent, the status of all enrolled Inferiors will
3290 be reported.
- 3291 **qualifiers**
- 3292 standardised or other qualifiers.
- 3293 **target-address**
- 3294 the address to which the REQUEST_STATUS message is sent. When used to a
3295 Decider, this will be the “decider-address” from the BEGUN message. Otherwise it may
3296 be a “superior-address” from a CONTEXT or “inferior-address” from an ENROL message.
- 3297 **reply-address**
- 3298 the address to which the replying INFERIOR_STATUSES is to be sent
- 3299 Types of FAULT possible (sent to reply-address):
- 3300 **General**
- 3301 **Redirect**
- 3302 if the intended target now has a different address
- 3303 **StatusRefused**
- 3304 if the receiver is not prepared to report its status to the sender of this message. This
3305 “fault-type” shall not be issued when a Decider receives REQUEST_STATUSES from the
3306 Terminator.
- 3307 **UnknownTransaction**
- 3308 if the transaction-identifier is unknown
- 3309 The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/all refers to a REQUEST_STATUS with the
3310 inferiors-list absent. The form REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS/specific refers to a
3311 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUS with the inferiors-list present.

3312 5.8.10 INFERIOR_STATUSES

- 3313 Sent by a Decider to report the status of all or some of its inferiors in response to a
3314 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES, PREPARE_INFERIORS, CANCEL_INFERIORS,
3315 CANCEL_TRANSACTION with “report-hazard” value of “true” and CONFIRM_TRANSACTION
3316 with “report-hazard” value of “true”. It is also used by any Actor in response to a received
3317 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES to report the status of inferiors, if there are any.

Parameter	Type
responders-identifier	Identifier
status-list	Set of Status items - see below
general-qualifiers	List of qualifiers
target-address	BTP Address

3318 **responders-identifier**

3319 the target-identifier used on the REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES.

3320 **status-list**

3321 contains a number of Status-items, each reporting the status of one of the inferiors of the
3322 Decider. The fields of a Status-item are

Field	Type
inferior-identifier	Inferior-identifier, identifying which inferior this Status-item contains information for.
status	One of the status values below (these are a subset of those for STATUS)
qualifiers	A list of qualifiers as received from the particular inferior or associated with the inferior in earlier messages (e.g. an Inferior name qualifier).

3323 The status value reports the current status of the particular inferior, as known to the
3324 Decider (Composer or Coordinator). Values are:

status value	Meaning
<i>active</i>	The Inferior is enrolled
<i>resigned</i>	RESIGNED has been received from the Inferior
<i>preparing</i>	PREPARE has been sent to the inferior, none of PREPARED, RESIGNED, CANCELLED, HAZARD have been received
<i>prepared</i>	PREPARED has been received
<i>autonomously confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/auto has been received, no completion message has been sent
<i>autonomously cancelled</i>	PREPARED had been received, and since then CANCELLED has been received but no completion message has been sent
<i>confirming</i>	CONFIRM has been sent, no outcome reply has been received
<i>confirmed</i>	CONFIRMED/response has been received
<i>cancelling</i>	CANCEL has been sent, no outcome reply has been received

status value	Meaning
<i>cancelled</i>	CANCELLED has been received, and PREPARED was not received previously
<i>cancel-contradiction</i>	Confirm had been ordered (and may have been sent), but CANCELLED was received
<i>confirm-contradiction</i>	Cancel had been ordered (and may have been sent) but CONFIRM/auto was received
<i>hazard</i>	A HAZARD message has been received
<i>invalid</i>	No such inferior is enrolled (used only in reply to a REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES/specific)

3325

3326 general-qualifiers

3327 standardised or other qualifiers applying to the INFERIOR_STATUSES as a whole. Each
 3328 Status-item contains a “qualifiers” field containing qualifiers applying to (and received
 3329 from) the particular Inferior.

3330 target-address

3331 the address to which the INFERIOR_STATUSES is sent. This will be the “reply-address”
 3332 on the received message

3333 If the inferiors-list parameter was present on the received message, only the inferiors identified by
 3334 that parameter shall have their status reported in status-list of this message. If the inferiors-list
 3335 parameter was absent, the status of all enrolled inferiors shall be reported, except that an inferior
 3336 that had been reported as *cancelled* or *resigned* on a previous INFERIOR_STATUSES message
 3337 **may** be omitted (sender’s option).

3338 5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages

3339 The following combinations of messages form related groups, for which the meaning of the group
 3340 is not just the aggregate of the meanings of the messages. The “&” notation is used to indicate
 3341 relatedness. Messages appearing in parentheses in the names of groups in this section indicate
 3342 messages that may or may not be present. The notation A & B / & C in a group name in this
 3343 section indicates a group that contains A and B, or A and C, or A, B and C, possibly with any of
 3344 those appearing more than once.

3345 5.9.1 CONTEXT & Application Message

3346 **Meaning:** the transmission of the Application Message is deemed to be part of the Business
 3347 Transaction identified by the CONTEXT. The exact effect of this for application work implied by
 3348 the transmission of the message is determined by the application – in many cases, it will mean
 3349 the effects of the Application Message are to be subject to the outcome delivered to an enrolled
 3350 Inferior, thus requiring the enrolment of a new Inferior if no appropriate Inferior is enrolled or if the
 3351 CONTEXT is for cohesion.

3352 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the Application Message. It is not required that the
 3353 application address be a BTP Address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined “additional
 3354 information” field – the Application Protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar
 3355 construct).

3356 There may be multiple Application Messages related to a single CONTEXT message. All the
 3357 Application Messages so related are deemed to be part of the Business Transaction identified by
 3358 the CONTEXT. This specification does not imply any further relatedness among the Application
 3359 Messages themselves (though the application might).

3360 The Actor that sends the group shall retain knowledge of the Superior address in the CONTEXT.
3361 If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the Actor shall also keep track of transmitted CONTEXTs
3362 for which no CONTEXT_REPLY has been received.

3363 If the CONTEXT is a CONTEXT/atom, the Actor receiving the CONTEXT shall ensure that a
3364 CONTEXT_REPLY message is sent back to the "reply-address" of the CONTEXT with the
3365 appropriate completion status.

3366 *Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT and one or more*
3367 *Application Messages depends on the binding to the Carrier Protocol. It is not*
3368 *necessary that the CONTEXT and Application Messages be closely associated "on*
3369 *the wire" (or even sent on the same connection) – some kind of referencing*
3370 *mechanism may be used.*

3371 5.9.2 CONTEXT_REPLY & Application Message

3372 **Meaning:** This related group applies only if the CONTEXT_REPLY message contains an inferior
3373 identifier parameter. In this case the transmission of the Application Message (and application
3374 effects implied by its transmission) has been associated with the Inferior whose identifier is in the
3375 CONTEXT_REPLY and the effects will be subject to the outcome delivered to that Inferior. As for
3376 CONTEXT & Application message, the exact effect of this for application work implied by the
3377 transmission of the message is determined by the application.

3378 **target-address:** the "target-address" is that of the Application Message. It is not required that the
3379 application address be a BTP Address (in particular, there is no BTP-defined "additional
3380 information" field – the Application Protocol (and its binding) may or may not have a similar
3381 construct).

3382 *Note – The representation of the relation between CONTEXT_REPLY and one or*
3383 *more Application Messages depends on the binding to the Carrier Protocol*

3384 5.9.3 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL

3385 **Meaning:** the enrolment of the Inferior identified in the ENROL is to be performed with the
3386 Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY is replying to. If the
3387 "completion-status" of CONTEXT_REPLY is "related", failure of this enrolment shall prevent the
3388 confirmation of the Business Transaction.

3389 **target-address:** the "target-address" is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the "reply-
3390 address" of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply application
3391 exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3392 The "target-address" of the ENROL message is omitted.

3393 The Actor receiving the related group will use the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT
3394 sent earlier to forward the ENROL. When doing so, it changes the ENROL to ask for a response
3395 (if it was an ENROL/no-rsp-req) and supplies its own address as the "reply-address",
3396 remembering the original "reply-address" if there was one.

3397 If ENROLLED is received and the original received ENROL was ENROL/rsp-req, the ENROLLED
3398 is forwarded back to the original "reply-address".

3399 If this attempt fails (i.e. ENROLLED is not received), and the "completion-status" of the
3400 CONTEXT_REPLY was "related", the Actor is required to ensure that the Superior does not
3401 proceed to confirmation. How this is achieved is an implementation option, but must take account
3402 of the possibility that direct communication with the Superior may fail. (One method is to prevent
3403 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION being sent to the Superior (in its Role as Decider); another is to enrol
3404 as another Inferior before sending the original CONTEXT out with an Application Message). If the
3405 Superior is a sub-coordinator or sub-composer, an enrolment failure must ensure the sub-
3406 coordinator does not send PREPARED to its own Superior.

3407 If the Actor receiving the related group is also the Superior (i.e. it has the same binding address),
3408 the explicit forwarding of the ENROL is not required, but the resultant effect – that if enrolment
3409 fails the Superior does not Confirm or issue PREPARED – shall be the same.

3410 A CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL group may contain multiple ENROL messages, for several
3411 Inferiors. Each ENROL shall be forwarded and an ENROLLED reply received before the Superior
3412 is allowed to Confirm if the “completion-status” in the CONTEXT_REPLY was “related”.

3413 When the group is constructed, if the CONTEXT had “superior-type” value of “atom”, the
3414 “completion-status” of the CONTEXT_REPLY shall be “related”. If the “superior-type” was
3415 “cohesive”, the “completion-status” shall be “incomplete” or “related” (as required by the
3416 application). If the value is “incomplete”, the Actor receiving the group shall forward the ENROLs,
3417 but is not required to prevent confirmation (though it may do so).

3418 **5.9.4 CONTEXT_REPLY (& ENROL) & PREPARED / & CANCELLED**

3419 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY and either or both of
3420 PREPARED and CANCELLED, with or without ENROL.

3421 **Meaning:** If ENROL is present, the meaning and required processing is the same as for
3422 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL. The PREPARED or CANCELLED message(s) are forwarded to
3423 the Superior identified in the CONTEXT message this CONTEXT_REPLY is replying to.

3424 *Note – the combination of CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & CANCELLED may be*
3425 *used to force cancellation of an atom*

3426 **target-address:** the “target-address” is that of the CONTEXT_REPLY. This will be the “reply-
3427 address” of the CONTEXT message (in many cases, including request/reply application
3428 exchanges, this address will usually be implicit).

3429 The “target-address” of the PREPARED and CANCELLED message is omitted – they will be sent
3430 to the Superior identified in the earlier CONTEXT message.

3431 The Actor receiving the group forwards the PREPARED or CANCELLED message to the Superior
3432 in as for an ENROL, using the retained Superior address from the CONTEXT sent earlier, except
3433 there is no reply required from the Superior.

3434 If (as is usual) an ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED message are for the same Inferior,
3435 the ENROL shall be sent first, but the Actor need not wait for the ENROLLED to come back
3436 before sending the PREPARED or CANCELLED (so an ENROL+PREPARED bundle from this
3437 Actor to the Superior could be used).

3438 The group can contain multiple ENROL, PREPARED and CANCELLED messages. Each
3439 PREPARED and CANCELLED message will be for a different Inferior. There is no constraint on
3440 the order of their forwarding, except that ENROL and PREPARED or CANCELLED for the same
3441 Inferior shall be delivered to the Superior in the order ENROL first, followed by the other message
3442 for that Inferior.

3443 **5.9.5 CONTEXT_REPLY & ENROL & Application Message (&** 3444 **PREPARED)**

3445 This combination is characterised by a related CONTEXT_REPLY, ENROL and an Application
3446 Message. PREPARED may or may not be present in the related group.

3447 **Meaning:** the relation between the BTP messages is as for the preceding groups. The
3448 transmission of the Application Message (and application effects implied by its transmission) has
3449 been associated with the Inferior identified by the ENROL and will be subject to the outcome
3450 delivered to that Inferior.

3451 **target-address:** the “target-address” of the group is the “target-address” of the
3452 CONTEXT_REPLY which shall also be the “target-address” of the Application Message. The
3453 ENROL and PREPARED messages do not contain their “target-address” parameters.

3454 The processing of ENROL and PREPARED messages is the same as for the previous groups.
 3455 This group can be used when participation in Business Transaction (normally a cohesion), is
 3456 initiated by the service (Inferior) side, which fetches or acquires the CONTEXT, with some
 3457 associated application semantic, performs some work for the transaction and sends an
 3458 Application Message with a related ENROL. The CONTEXT_REPLY allows the addressing of the
 3459 application (and the CONTEXT_REPLY) to be distinct from that of the Superior.
 3460 The Actor receiving the group may associate the “inferior-identifier” received on the ENROL with
 3461 the Application Message in a manner that is visible to the application receiving the message (e.g.
 3462 for subsequent use in Terminator:Decider exchanges).

3463 5.10 Standard qualifiers

3464 The following qualifiers are expected to be of general use to many applications and
 3465 environments. The URI “[http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-
 3466 btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd)” is used in the Qualifier group value for the qualifiers
 3467 defined here.

3468 5.10.1 Transaction timelimit

3469 The transaction timelimit allows the Superior (or an Application Element initiating the Business
 3470 Transaction) to indicate the expected length of the active phase, and thus give an indication to
 3471 the Inferior of when it would be appropriate to initiate cancellation if the active phase appears to
 3472 continue too long. The time limit ends (the clock stops) when the Inferior decides to be prepared
 3473 and issues PREPARED to the Superior.

3474 It should be noted that the expiry of the time limit does not change the permissible actions of the
 3475 Inferior. At any time prior to deciding to be prepared (for an Inferior), the Inferior is **permitted** to
 3476 initiate cancellation for internal reasons. The timelimit gives an indication to the entity of when it
 3477 will be useful to exercise this right.

3478 The qualifier is propagated on a CONTEXT message.

3479 The “Qualifier name” shall be “transaction-timelimit”.

3480 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
timelimit	Integer

3481

3482 **timelimit**

3483 indicates the maximum (further) duration, expressed as whole seconds from the time of
 3484 transmission of the containing CONTEXT, of the active phase of the Business
 3485 Transaction.

3486 5.10.2 Inferior timeout

3487 This qualifier allows an Inferior to limit the duration of its “promise”, when sending PREPARED,
 3488 that it will maintain the ability to Confirm or Cancel the effects of all associated operations.
 3489 Without this qualifier, an Inferior is expected to retain the ability to Confirm or Cancel indefinitely.
 3490 If the timeout does expire, the Inferior is released from its promise and can apply the decision
 3491 indicated in the qualifier.

3492 It should be noted that BTP recognises the possibility that an Inferior may be forced to apply a
 3493 Confirm or Cancel decision before the CONFIRM or CANCEL is received and before this timeout
 3494 expires (or if this qualifier is not used). Such a decision is termed a heuristic decision, and (as
 3495 with other transaction mechanisms), is considered to be an exceptional event. As with heuristic
 3496 decisions, the taking of an autonomous decision by an Inferior **subsequent** to the expiry of this

3497 timeout is liable to cause contradictory decisions across the Business Transaction. BTP ensures
3498 that at least the occurrence of such a contradiction will be (eventually) reported to the Superior of
3499 the Business Transaction. BTP treats “true” heuristic decisions and autonomous decisions after
3500 timeout the same way – in fact, the expiry in this timeout does not cause a qualitative (state table)
3501 change in what can happen, but rather a step change in the probability that it will.

3502 The expiry of the timeout does not strictly require that the Inferior immediately invokes the
3503 intended decision, only that it is at liberty to do so. An implementation may choose to only apply
3504 the decision if there is contention for the underlying resource, for example. Nevertheless,
3505 Superiors are recommended to avoid relying on this and ensure that decisions for the Business
3506 Transaction are made before these timeouts expire (and allow a margin of error for network
3507 latency etc.).

3508 The qualifier may be present on a PREPARED message. If the PREPARED message has the
3509 “default-is cancel” parameter “true”, then the “IntendedDecision” field of this qualifier shall have
3510 the value “cancel”.

3511 The “Qualifier name” shall be “inferior-timeout”.

3512 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
timeout	Integer
intended-decision	“confirm” or “cancel”

3513

3514 **timeout**

3515 indicates how long, expressed as whole seconds from the time of transmission of the
3516 carrying message, the Inferior intends to maintain its ability to either Confirm or Cancel
3517 the effects of the associated operations, as ordered by the receiving Superior.

3518 **intended-decision**

3519 indicates which outcome will be applied, if the timeout completes and an autonomous
3520 decision is made.

3521 **5.10.3 Minimum inferior timeout**

3522 This qualifier allows a Superior to constrain the Inferior timeout qualifier received from the Inferior.
3523 If a Superior knows that the decision for the Business Transaction will not be determined for
3524 some period, it can require that Inferiors do not send PREPARED messages with Inferior
3525 timeouts that would expire before then. An Inferior that is unable or unwilling to send a
3526 PREPARED message with a longer (or no) timeout **should** Cancel, and reply with CANCELLED.

3527 The qualifier may be present on a CONTEXT, ENROLLED or PREPARE message. If present on
3528 more than one, and with different values of the MinimumTimeout field, the value on ENROLLED
3529 shall prevail over that on CONTEXT and the value on PREPARE shall prevail over either of the
3530 others.

3531 The “Qualifier name” shall be “minimum-inferior-timeout”.

3532 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
minimum-timeout	Integer

3533

3534 **minimum-timeout**

3535 is the minimum value of timeout, expressed as whole seconds, that will be acceptable in
3536 the Inferior timeout qualifier on an answering PREPARED message.

3537 **5.10.4 Inferior name**

3538 This qualifier allows an Enroller to supply a name for the Inferior that will be visible on
3539 INFERIOR_STATUSES and thus allow the Terminator to determine which Inferior (of the
3540 Composer or Coordinator) is related to which application work. This is in addition to the “inferior-
3541 identifier” field. The name can be human-readable and can also be used in fault tracing,
3542 debugging and auditing.

3543 The name is never used by the BTP Actors themselves to identify each other or to direct
3544 messages. (The BTP Actors use the addresses and the identifiers in the message parameters for
3545 those purposes.)

3546 This specification makes no requirement that the names are unambiguous within any scope
3547 (unlike the globally unambiguous “inferior-identifier” on ENROLLED and BEGUN). Other
3548 specifications, including those defining use of BTP with a particular application may place
3549 requirements on the use and form of the names. (This may include reference to information
3550 passed in Application Messages or in other, non-standardised, qualifiers.)

3551 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN, ENROL and in the “qualifiers” field of a Status-item in
3552 INFERIOR_STATUSES. It is present on BEGIN only if there is a related CONTEXT; if present,
3553 the same qualifier value **should** be included in the consequent ENROL. If
3554 INFERIOR_STATUSES includes a Status-item for an Inferior whose ENROL had an inferior-
3555 name qualifier, the same qualifier value **should** be included in the Status-item.

3556 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “inferior-name”

3557 The “Content” shall contain the following fields:

Content field	Type
inferior-name	String

3558 **inferior-name**

3559 the name assigned to the enrolling Inferior.
3560

3561 **5.10.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants**

3562 The cancel-on-zero-participants qualifier causes a cohesion composer to be automatically
3563 cancelled if its list of registered participants becomes zero after either a PREPARE_INFERIORS
3564 or CANCEL_INFERIORS message is received. This cancellation happens if the value for cancel-
3565 on-zero-participants is set to true, and the result will be a TRANSACTION_CANCELLED
3566 message returned to the terminator as a reply to the PREPARE_INFERIORS or
3567 CANCEL_INFERIORS message, instead of INFERIOR_STATUSES.

3568 The qualifier may be present on BEGIN if the “transaction-type” is “cohesion” and on
3569 PREPARE_INFERIORS and CANCEL_INFERIORS. If present on PREPARE_INFERIORS or
3570 CANCEL_INFERIORS the value overrides any previous value.

3571 If the qualifier is not present on any message, a cohesion composer shall behave as if the value
3572 was “false”.

3573 The “Qualifier -name” shall be “cancel-on-zero-participants”

3574 The “Content” shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
value	“true” or “false”

3575 **5.10.6 Expected-time-till-state-change**

3576 The expected-time-till-state-change qualifier can be sent on any message to give an indication of
3577 when the sender anticipates it will undergo a state change that would trigger a further message.
3578 For example, an Inferior receiving PREPARE that triggers application work that will take an hour
3579 to complete could send INFERIOR_STATE/prepare-received with an expected-time-to-state-
3580 change of 4000 seconds (giving itself some margin for error). The Superior could use this
3581 information to modify its polling and retry algorithm.

3582 Values sent on this qualifier are indications only. Sending this qualifier never causes a state
3583 change in either party. Sending does not prevent the sender from changing state much earlier,
3584 nor inhibit the sending of any message reflecting such a change; neither does it commit the
3585 sender to changing state at the time stated. The persistence and recovery requirements implied
3586 by BTP are not affected.

3587 The "Qualifier -name" shall be "expected-time-till-state-change"

3588 The "Content" shall contain the following field:

Content field	Type
expected-time	Integer

3589
3590 **expected-time**

3591 is a time expressed as whole seconds, within which the sender anticipates that it will
3592 undergo a state change triggered by events other than the receipt of messages on this
3593 BTP relationship.

6 State Tables

The state tables deal with the state transitions of the Superior and Inferior roles and which message can be sent and received in each state. The state tables directly cover only a single, bilateral Superior:Inferior relationship. The interactions between, for example, multiple Inferiors of a single Superior that will apply the same decision to all or some of them, are dealt with in the definitions of the “decision” events which also specify when changes are made to persistent state information (see below).

There are two state tables, one for Superior, one for Inferior. States are identified by a letter-digit pair, with upper-case letters for the superior, lower-case for the inferior. The same letter is used to group states which have the same, or similar, persistent state, with the digit indicating volatile state changes or minor variations. Corresponding upper and lower-case letters are used to identify (approximately) corresponding Superior and Inferior states.

The Inferior table includes events occurring both at the Inferior as such and at the associated Enroller, as the Enroller’s actions are constrained by and constrain the Inferior Role itself.

In the state tables, each side is either waiting to make a decision or can send a message. For some states, the message to be sent is a repetition of a regular message; for other states, the INFERIOR_STATE or SUPERIOR_STATE message can be sent, requesting a response. Normally, on entry to a state that allows the sending of any message other than one of the *_STATE messages, the implementation will send that message – failure to do so will cause the relationship to lock up. The message can be resent if the implementation determines that the original message (or the next message sent in reply) may have been lost.

6.1 Status queries

In BTP the messages SUPERIOR_STATE and INFERIOR_STATE are available to prompt the Peer to report its current state by repeating the previous message (when this is allowed) or by sending the other *_STATE message. The “reply_requested” parameter of these messages distinguishes between their use as a prompt and as a reply. An implementation receiving a *_STATE message with “reply_requested” as “true” is not required to reply immediately – it may choose to delay any reply until a decision event occurs and then send the appropriate new message (e.g. on receiving INFERIOR_STATE/prepared/y while in state E1, a superior is permitted to delay until it has performed “decide to confirm” or “decide to cancel”). However, this may cause the other side to repeatedly send interrogatory *_STATE messages.

Note that a Superior (or some entity standing in for a now-extinct Superior) uses SUPERIOR_STATE/unknown to reply to messages received from an Inferior where the Superior:Inferior relationship is in an unknown (using state “Y1”). The *_STATE messages with a “state” value “inaccessible” can be used as a reply when **any** message is received and the implementation is temporarily unable to determine whether the relationship is known or what the state is. Receipt of the *_STATE/inaccessible messages is not shown in the tables and has no effect on the state at the receiving side (though it may cause the implementation to resend its own message after some interval of its own choosing).

6.2 Decision events

The persistent state changes (equivalent to logging in a regular transaction system) and some other events are modelled as “decision events” (e.g. “decide to confirm”, “decide to be prepared”). The exact nature of the real events and changes in an implementation that are modelled by these events depends on the position of the Superior or Inferior within the Business Transaction and on features of the implementation (e.g. making of a persistent record of the decision means that the information will survive at least some failures that otherwise lose state information, but the level of

3640 survival depends on the purpose of the implementation). Table 3 and Table 4 define the decision
3641 events.

3642 The Superior event “decide to prepare” is considered semi-persistent. Since the sending of
3643 PREPARE indicates that the application exchange (to associate operations with the Inferior) is
3644 complete, it is not meaningful for the Superior:Inferior relationship to revert to an earlier state
3645 corresponding to an incomplete application exchange. However, implementations are not
3646 required to make the sending of PREPARE persistent in terms of recovery – a Superior that
3647 experiences failure after sending PREPARE may, on recovery, have no information about the
3648 transaction, in which case it is considered to be in the completed state (Z), which will imply the
3649 cancellation of the Inferior and its associated operations.

3650 Where a Superior is an Intermediate (i.e. is itself an Inferior to another Superior entity), in a
3651 Transaction Tree, its “decide to confirm” and “decide to cancel” decisions will in fact be the receipt
3652 of a CONFIRM or CANCEL instruction from its own Superior, without necessary change of local
3653 persistent information (which would combine both superior and inferior information, pointing both
3654 up and down the tree).

3655 **6.3 Disruptions – failure events**

3656 Failure events are modelled as “disruption”. A failure and the subsequent recovery will (or may)
3657 cause a change of state. The disruption events in the state tables model different extents of loss
3658 of state information. An implementation is **not** required to exhibit all the possible disruption
3659 events, but it is not allowed to exhibit state transitions that do not correspond to a possible
3660 disruption. The different levels of disruption describe legitimate states for the endpoint to be in
3661 after it has been restored to normal functioning. The absence of a destination state for the
3662 disruption events means that such a transition is not legitimate – thus, for example, an Inferior
3663 that has decided to be prepared will always recover to the same state, by virtue of the information
3664 persisted in the “decide to be prepared” event.

3665 In addition to the disruption events in the tables, there is an implicit “disruption 0” event, which
3666 involves possible interruption of service and loss of messages in transit, but no change of state
3667 (either because no state information was lost, or because recovery from persistent information
3668 restores the implementation to the same state). The “disruption 0” event would typically be an
3669 appropriate abstraction for a communication failure.

3670 **6.4 Invalid cells and assumptions of the communication** 3671 **mechanism**

3672 The empty cells in state table represent events that cannot happen. For events corresponding to
3673 sending a message or any of the decision events, this prohibition is absolute – e.g. a conformant
3674 implementation in the Superior active state “B1” will not send CONFIRM. For events
3675 corresponding to receiving a message, the interpretation depends on the properties of the
3676 underlying communications mechanism.

3677 For all communication mechanisms, it is assumed that:

- 3678 • the two directions of the Superior:Inferior communication are not synchronised – that is
3679 messages travelling in opposite directions can cross each other to any degree; any number
3680 of messages may be in transit in either direction; and
- 3681 • messages may be lost arbitrarily.

3682 If the communication mechanisms guarantee ordered delivery (i.e. that messages, if delivered at
3683 all, are delivered to the receiver in the order they were sent), then receipt of a message in a state
3684 where the corresponding cell is empty indicates that the far-side has sent a message out of order
3685 – a FAULT message with the “fault-type” “WrongState” can be returned.

3686 If the communication mechanisms cannot guarantee ordered delivery, then messages received
3687 where the corresponding cell is empty should be ignored. Assuming the far-side is conformant,

3688 these messages can assumed to be “stale” and have been overtaken by messages sent later but
3689 already delivered. (If the far-side is non-conformant, there is a problem anyway).

3690 6.5 Meaning of state table events

3691 The tables in this section define the events (rows) in the state tables. Table 2 defines the events
3692 corresponding to sending or receiving BTP messages and the disruption events. Table 3
3693 describes the decision events for an Inferior, Table 4 those for a Superior.

3694 The decision events for a Superior, defined in Table 4 cannot be specified without reference to
3695 other Inferiors to which it is Superior, and to its relation with the application or other entity that
3696 (acting ultimately on behalf of the application) drives it.

3697 The term “remaining Inferiors” refers to any Actors to which this endpoint is Superior, and which
3698 are to be treated as an atomic decision unit with (and thus including) the Inferior on this
3699 relationship. If the CONTEXT for this Superior:Inferior relationship had a “superior-type” of “atom”,
3700 this will be all Inferiors established with same Superior address and “superior-identifier” except
3701 those from which RESIGN has been received. If the CONTEXT had “superior-type” of “cohesion”,
3702 the “remaining Inferiors” excludes any that it has been determined will be cancelled, as well as
3703 any that have resigned – in other words it includes only those for which a Confirm decision is still
3704 possible or has been made. The determination of exactly which Inferiors are “remaining Inferiors”
3705 in a Cohesion is determined, in some way, by the application. The term “Other remaining
3706 Inferiors” excludes this Inferior on this relationship. A Superior with a single Inferior will have no
3707 “other remaining Inferiors”.

3708 In order to ensure that the confirmation decision is delivered to all remaining Inferiors, despite
3709 failures, the Superior must persistently record which Inferiors these are (i.e. their addresses and
3710 identifiers). It must also either record that the decision is Confirm, or ensure that the Confirm
3711 decision (if there is one) is persistently recorded somewhere else, and that it will be told about it.
3712 This latter would apply if the Superior were also BTP Inferior to another entity which persisted a
3713 Confirm decision (or recursively deferred it still higher). However, since there is no requirement
3714 that the Superior be also a BTP Inferior to any other entity, the behaviour of asking another entity
3715 to make (and persist) the Confirm decision is termed “offering confirmation” - the Superior offers
3716 the possible confirmation of itself, and its remaining Inferiors to some other entity. If that entity (or
3717 something higher up) then does make and persist a Confirm decision, the Superior is “instructed
3718 to confirm” (which is equivalent BTP CONFIRM).

3719 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may request a Superior
3720 to prepare an Inferior (or all Inferiors). This typically implies that there will be no more operations
3721 associated with the Inferior. Following a request to prepare all remaining Inferiors, the Superior
3722 may offer confirmation to the entity that requested the prepare. (If the Superior is also a BTP
3723 Inferior, its superior can be considered an entity acting on behalf of the application.)

3724 The application, or an entity acting indirectly on behalf of the application, may also request
3725 confirmation. This means the Superior is to attempt to make and persist a Confirm decision itself,
3726 rather than offer confirmation.

3727 **Table 2 : send, receive and disruption events**

Event name	Meaning
send/receive ENROL/rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = true
send/receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	send/receive ENROL with response-requested = false
send/receive RESIGN/rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = true
send/receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	send/receive RESIGN with response-requested = false
send/receive PREPARED	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = false
send/receive PREPARED/cancel	send/receive PREPARED, with default-cancel = true

Event name	Meaning
send/receive CONFIRMED/auto	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = true
send/receive CONFIRMED/response	send/receive CONFIRMED, with confirm-received = false
send/receive HAZARD	send/receive HAZARD
send/receive INF_STATE/***/y	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true
send/receive INF_STATE/***	send/receive INFERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false
send/receive SUP_STATE/***/y	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = true ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
send/receive SUP_STATE/***	send/receive SUPERIOR_STATE with status *** and response-requested = false ("prepared-rcvd" represents "prepared-received")
disruption ***	Loss of state– new state is state applying after any local recovery processes complete

3728

3729

Table 3 : Decision events for Inferior

Event name	Meaning
decide to resign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any associated operations have had no effect (data state is unchanged).
decide to be prepared	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations can be confirmed or cancelled; information to retain confirm/cancel ability has been made persistent
decide to be prepared/cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As "decide to be prepared"; the persistent information specifies that the default action will be to cancel
decide to confirm autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to confirm autonomously has been made persistent; the effects of associated operations will be confirmed regardless of failures
decide to cancel autonomously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decision to Cancel autonomously has been made persistent the effects of associated operations will be cancelled regardless of failures
apply ordered confirmation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects of all associated operations have been confirmed; Persistent information is effectively removed
remove persistent information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Persistent information is effectively removed;

Event name	Meaning
detect problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For at least some of the associated operations, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> EITHER they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; OR it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed; AND information about this is not persistent.
detect and record problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For at least some of the associated operations, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> EITHER they cannot be consistently cancelled or consistently confirmed; OR it cannot be determined whether they will be cancelled or confirmed; AND <ul style="list-style-type: none"> EITHER information recording this has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate) OR the detection itself is persistent. (i.e. will be re-detected on recovery)

3730

3731

Table 4: Decision events for a Superior

Event name	Meaning
decide to confirm one-phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All associated Application Messages to be sent to the service have been sent; There are no other remaining Inferiors If an Atom, all enrolments that would create other Inferiors have completed (no outstanding CONTEXT_REPLYS) The Superior has been requested to confirm
decide to prepare	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All associated Application Messages to be sent to the service have been sent; The Superior has been requested to prepare this Inferior
decide to confirm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> PREPARED or PREPARED/cancel has been received from all other remaining Inferiors; AND Superior has been requested to confirm; AND persistent information records the confirm decision and identifies all remaining Inferiors; Or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> persistent information records an offer of confirmation and has been instructed to confirm

Event name	Meaning
decide to cancel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superior has not offered confirmation; OR • Superior has offered confirmation and has been instructed to Cancel; OR • Superior has offered confirmation but has made an autonomous cancellation decision
remove confirm information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Persistent information has been effectively removed;
record contradiction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information recording the contradiction has been persisted (to the degree considered appropriate)

3732

3733 6.6 Persistent information

3734 Persisted information (especially prepared information at an Inferior, confirm information at a
3735 Superior) may include qualifications of the state carried in Qualifiers of the corresponding
3736 message (e.g. inferior timeouts in prepared information). It may also include application-specific
3737 information (especially in Inferiors) to allow the future confirmation or cancellation of the
3738 associated operations. In some cases it will also include information allowing an Application
3739 Message sent with a BTP message (e.g. PREPARED) to be repeated.

3740 The “effective” removal of persistent information allows for the possibility that the information is
3741 retained (perhaps for audit and tracing purposes) but some change to the persistent information
3742 (as a whole) means that if there is a failure after such change, on recovery, the persistent
3743 information does not cause the endpoint to return the state it would have recovered to before the
3744 change.

3745 In all cases, the degree to which information described as “persistent” will survive failure is a
3746 configuration and implementation option. An implementation **should** describe the level of failure
3747 that it is capable of surviving. For applications manipulating information that is itself volatile (e.g.
3748 network configurations), there is no requirement to make the BTP state information more
3749 persistent than the application information.

3750 The degree of persistence of the recording of a hazard (problem) at an Inferior and recording of a
3751 detected contradiction at a Superior may be different from that applying to the persistent prepared
3752 and confirm information. Implementations and configuration may choose to pass hazard and
3753 contradiction information via management mechanisms rather than through BTP. Such passing of
3754 information to a management mechanism could be treated as “record problem” or “record
3755 contradiction”.

Table 5 : Superior states

State	summary
I1	CONTEXT created
A1	ENROLing
B1	ENROLLED (active)
B2	ENROLLED – repeat ENROL received
C1	resigning
D1	PREPARE sent
E1	PREPARED received
E2	PREPARED/cancel received
F1	CONFIRM sent
F2	completed after confirm
G1	Cancel decided
G2	CANCEL sent
G3	cancelling, RESIGN received
G4	both cancelled
H1	inferior autonomously confirmed
J1	Inferior autonomously cancelled
K1	confirmed, contradiction detected
L1	cancelled, contradiction detected
P1	hazard reported
P2	hazard reported in null state
P3	hazard reported after confirm decision
P4	hazard reported after Cancel decision
Q1	contradiction detected in null state
R1	Contradiction or hazard recorded
R2	completed after contradiction or hazard recorded
S1	one-phase confirm decided
Y1	completed queried
Z	completed and unknown

Table 6 : Inferior states

State	summary
i1	aware of CONTEXT
a1	enrolling
b1	enrolled
c1	resigning
d1	preparing
e1	prepared
e2	prepared,default to cancel
f1	confirming
f2	confirming after default cancel
g1	CANCEL received in prepared state
g2	CANCEL received in prepared/cancel state
h1	Autonomously confirmed
h2	autonomously confirmed, superior confirmed
j1	autonomously cancelled
j2	autonomously cancelled, superior cancelled
k1	autonomously cancelled, contradicted
k2	autonomously cancelled, CONTRADICTION received
l1	autonomously confirmed, contradicted
l2	autonomously confirmed, CONTRADICTION received
m1	confirmation applied
n1	cancelling
n2	cancelling after receiving PREPARE
p1	hazard detected, not recorded
p2	hazard detected in prepared state, not recorded
q1	hazard recorded
s1	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received after prepared state
s2	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received
s3	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, confirming
s4	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, cancelling
s5	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard detected
s6	CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE received, hazard recorded
x1	completed, presuming abort
x2	completed, presuming abort after prepared/cancel
y1	completed, queried
y2	completed, default cancel, a message received
y3	Completed after cancelled, a message received
z	completed
z1	completed with default cancel
z2	completed after cancellation

3760

6.7 Superior state table

3761

Table 7: Superior state table – active, resigning and prepared

	I 1	A1	B1	B2	C1	D1	E1	E2
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req	A1	A1	B2	B2		D1		
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req	B1		B1	B1		D1		
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req	Y1		C1	C1	C1	C1		
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req	Z		Z	Z	Z	Z		
recei ve PREPARED	Y1		E1	E1		E1	E1	
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	Y1		E2	E2		E2		E2
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	Q1		H1	H1		H1	H1	
recei ve CONFIR MED/response								
recei ve CANCELLED	Y1		Z	Z		Z	J1	J1
recei ve HAZARD	P1	P1	P1	P1		P1	P1	P1
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y	Y1	A1	B1	B2		D1		
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve			B1	B2		D1		
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y						D1		
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd						D1		
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd/y								
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd								
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd/y								
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd								
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z		
send ENROLLED		B1		B1				
send RESI GNED					Z			
send PREPARE						D1		
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE								
send CONFIR M								
send CANCEL								
send CONTRADI CTI ON								
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y			B1					
send SUP_STATE/acti ve			B1					
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							E1	E2
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							E1	E2
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd/y								
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd								
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known/y								
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known								
send SUP_STATE/unknown								
decide to confi rm one-phase			S1	S1		S1	S1	S1
decide to prepare			D1	D1				
decide to confi rm							F1	F1
decide to cancel		G1	G1	G1		G1	G1	Z
remove persi stent i nformati on								
record contradi cti on								
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	B1	Z	Z	Z
di srupti on II					Z		D1	D1
di srupti on III							B1	B1
di srupti on IV								

Table 8 : Superior state table -- confirming and cancelling

	F1	F2	G1	G2	G3	G4
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req			G1	G2		
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req			G1	G2		
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req			G3	Z	G3	
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req			Z	Z	Z	
recei ve PREPARED	F1		G1	G2		
recei ve PREPARED/cancel	F1		G1	G2		
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto	F1		L1	L1		
recei ve CONFIR MED/response	F2	F2				
recei ve CANCELLED	K1		G4	Z		G4
recei ve HAZARD	P3		P4	P4		
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y			G1	G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve			G1	G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y			G1	G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd			G1	G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd/y	F1					
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd	F1					
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd/y				G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd				G2		
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown			Z	Z	Z	Z
send ENROLLED						
send RESI GNED						
send PREPARE						
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE						
send CONFIR M	F1					
send CANCEL			G2	G2	Z	Z
send CONTRADI CTI ON						
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y						
send SUP_STATE/acti ve						
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd/y						
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd						
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known/y						
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known						
send SUP_STATE/unknown						
decide to confi rm one-phase						
decide to prepare						
decide to confi rm						
decide to cancel						
remove persi stent i nformati on		Z				
record contradi cti on						
di srupti on I		F1	Z	Z	Z	Z
di srupti on II					G2	G2
di srupti on III						
di srupti on IV						

Table 9 : Superior state table – autonomous decisions

	H1	J1	K1	L1
receiving ENROL/rsp-req receiving ENROL/no-rsp-req receiving RESIGN/rsp-req receiving RESIGN/no-rsp-req receiving PREPARED receiving PREPARED/cancel receiving CONFIRMED/auto receiving CONFIRMED/response receiving CANCELLED receiving HAZARD	H1	J1	K1	L1
receiving INF_STATE/active/y receiving INF_STATE/active receiving INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y receiving INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd receiving INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y receiving INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd receiving INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y receiving INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd receiving INF_STATE/unknown				
send ENROLLED send RESIGNED send PREPARE send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE send CONFIRM send CANCEL send CONTRADICTION				
send SUP_STATE/active/y send SUP_STATE/active send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known send SUP_STATE/unknown	H1 H1	J1 J1	K1 K1	L1 L1
decide to confirm one-phase decide to prepare decide to confirm decide to cancel remove persistent information record contradiction	S1 F1 L1	 K1 G4		
disruption I disruption II disruption III disruption IV	Z E1 D1 B1	Z E1 D1 B1	F1	Z G2

Table 10 : Superior state table – hazard

	P1	P2	P3	P4	Q1	R1	R2
recei ve ENROL/rsp-req							
recei ve ENROL/no-rsp-req							
recei ve RESI GN/rsp-req							
recei ve RESI GN/no-rsp-req							
recei ve PREPARED							
recei ve PREPARED/cancel							
recei ve CONFIR MED/auto					Q1	R1	R1
recei ve CONFIR MED/response					Z	R2	R2
recei ve CANCELLED						R1	R1
recei ve HAZARD	P1	P2	P3	P4		R1	R1
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve/y							
recei ve INF_STATE/acti ve							
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y							
recei ve INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd							
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd/y							
recei ve INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd							
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd/y							
recei ve INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd							
recei ve INF_STATE/unknown	P1	P2		P4		R2	R2
send ENROLLED							
send RESI GNED							
send PREPARE							
send CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE							
send CONFIR M							
send CANCEL							
send CONTRADI CTION						R2	
send SUP_STATE/acti ve/y							
send SUP_STATE/acti ve							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd/y							
send SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd							
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known/y	P1		P3	P4			
send SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known	P1		P3	P4			
send SUP_STATE/unknown							
decide to confi rm one-phase							
decide to prepare							
decide to confi rm							
decide to cancel							
remove persi stent i nformati on							Z
record contradi cti on	R1	R1	R1	R1	R1		
di srupti on I	Z	Z	Z	Z	Z		R1
di srupti on II	D1		F1	G2			
di srupti on III	B1						
di srupti on IV							

Table 11 : Superior state table – one phase confirm and completing

	S1	Y1	Z
receive ENROL/rsp-req	S1	Y1	Y1
receive ENROL/no-rsp-req	S1	Y1	Y1
receive RESIGN/rsp-req	Z	Y1	Y1
receive RESIGN/no-rsp-req	Z	Z	Z
receive PREPARED	S1	Y1	Y1
receive PREPARED/cancel	S1	Y1	Y1
receive CONFIRMED/auto	S1	Q1	Q1
receive CONFIRMED/response	Z	Z	Z
receive CANCELLED	Z	Y1	Y1
receive HAZARD	Z	P2	P2
receive INF_STATE/active/y	S1	Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/active	S1	Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y		Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd		Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y			
receive INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd			
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y		Y1	Y1
receive INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd		Y1	Z
receive INF_STATE/unknown	Z	Z	Z
send ENROLLED	S1		
send RESIGNED			
send PREPARE			
send CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE			
send CONFIRM			
send CANCEL			
send CONTRADICTION			
send SUP_STATE/active/y			
send SUP_STATE/active			
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y			
send SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd			
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y			
send SUP_STATE/contradiction-known		Z	
send SUP_STATE/unknown			
decide to confirm one-phase			
decide to prepare			
decide to confirm			
decide to cancel			
remove persistent information			
record contradiction			
disruption I	Z	Z	
disruption II			
disruption III			
disruption IV			

3770

6.8 Inferior state table

3771

Table 12: Inferior state table – active, resigning and prepared

	i 1	a1	b1	c1	d1	e1	e2
send ENROL/rsp-req	a1	a1					
send ENROL/no-rsp-req	b1		b1				
send RESI GN/rsp-req				c1			
send RESI GN/no-rsp-req				z		e1	
send PREPARED							e2
send PREPARED/cancel							
send CONFIR MED/auto							
send CONFIR MED/response							
send CANCELLED			z2		z2		
send HAZARD							
send INF_STATE/acti ve/y		a1	b1				
send INF_STATE/acti ve			b1				
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y					d1		
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd					d1		
send INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd/y							
send INF_STATE/confi rm-rcvd							
send INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd/y							
send INF_STATE/cancel -rcvd							
send INF_STATE/unknown							
recei ve ENROLLED		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
recei ve RESI GNED				z			
recei ve PREPARE		d1	d1	c1	d1	e1	e2
recei ve CONFIR M_ONE_PHASE		s2	s2	z	d1	s1	s1
recei ve CONFIR M						f1	f2
recei ve CANCEL		n1	n1	z	n2	g1	g2
recei ve CONTRADI CTI ON							
recei ve SUP_STATE/acti ve/y		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
recei ve SUP_STATE/acti ve		b1	b1	c1		e1	e2
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y						e1	e2
recei ve SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd						e1	e2
recei ve SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd/y							
recei ve SUP_STATE/confi rmed-rcvd							
recei ve SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd/y							
recei ve SUP_STATE/cancel led-rcvd							
recei ve SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known/y							
recei ve SUP_STATE/contradi cti on-known							
recei ve SUP_STATE/unknown		z	z	z	z	x1	x2
decide to resi gn			c1		c1		
decide to be prepared			e1		e1		
decide to be prepared/cancel			e2		e2		
decide to confi rm autonomously						h1	
decide to cancel autonomously						j 1	z1
apply ordered confi rmati on							
remove persi stent i nformati on							
detect problem		p1	p1		p1	p2	p2
detect and record problem							
di srupti on I		z	z	z	z		
di srupti on II					b1		
di srupti on III							

Table 13 : Inferior state table – confirm and cancel

	f1	f2	g1	g2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD				
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown	f1 f1	f2 f2	g1 g1	g2 g2
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	f1	f2	g1	g2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown			x1	x2
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	m1 p2	m1 p2	n1 p2	n1 p2
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	e1	e2

Table 14 : inferior state table – autonomous decisions and contradiction

	h1	h2	j 1	j 2	k1	k2	l 1	l 2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD	h1		j 1		k1		l 1	
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown	h2		j 2					
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	h1 h1 s3 h2 h2 l1 l2	h2	j 1 j 1 s4 k1 j 2 j 2 k2		k1 k2	k2	l 1 l 2	l 2
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown	h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 h1 l1		j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 1 j 2		k1 k1 k2	k2	l 1 l 1 l 1	
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem	m1		z		z		z	
disruption I disruption II disruption III	h1		j 1		j 1 j 1	k1 j 1	h1 h1	l 1 h1

Table 15 : inferior state table – cancelling and hazard

	m1	n1	n2	p1	p2	q1
send ENROL/rsp-req						
send ENROL/no-rsp-req						
send RESIGN/rsp-req						
send RESIGN/no-rsp-req						
send PREPARED						
send PREPARED/cancel						
send CONFIRMED/auto						
send CONFIRMED/response	z					
send CANCELLED		z2	z2			
send HAZARD				p1	p2	q1
send INF_STATE/active/y						
send INF_STATE/active						
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y						
send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd						
send INF_STATE/unknown						
receive ENROLLED				p1	p2	q1
receive RESIGNED						
receive PREPARE				p1	p2	q1
receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE				s5	s5	s6
receive CONFIRM	m1				p2	q1
receive CANCEL		n1	n2	p1	p2	q1
receive CONTRADICTION				z	z	z
receive SUP_STATE/active/y				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/active				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y					p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd					p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y						
receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd						
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y						
receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd						
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known				p1	p2	q1
receive SUP_STATE/unknown		z2	z2	p1	p2	q1
decide to resign						
decide to be prepared						
decide to be prepared/cancel						
decide to confirm autonomously						
decide to cancel autonomously						
apply ordered confirmation						
remove persistent information						
detect problem		p1	p1			
detect and record problem				q1	q1	
disruption I	z	z	z	z		
disruption II		b1	d1			
disruption III			b1			

Table 16 : inferior state table – one phase confirmation

	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD			z	z2	z	z
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown						
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION	s1	s2	s3	s4	s5	s6
			s3		z	s6
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown	x1	z	z	z	z	z
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem		s3 s4 s2				
		s6				
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	z		z	z	

Table 17 : inferior state table – completing states including queried when completed

	x1	x2	y1	y2	y3	z	z1	z2
send ENROL/rsp-req send ENROL/no-rsp-req send RESIGN/rsp-req send RESIGN/no-rsp-req send PREPARED send PREPARED/cancel send CONFIRMED/auto send CONFIRMED/response send CANCELLED send HAZARD								
send INF_STATE/active/y send INF_STATE/active send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/prepare-rcvd send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/confirm-rcvd send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd/y send INF_STATE/cancel-rcvd send INF_STATE/unknown								
receive ENROLLED receive RESIGNED receive PREPARE receive CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE receive CONFIRM receive CANCEL receive CONTRADICTION			y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 z	y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 z z	y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3	z z y1 y1 m1 y1 z	z1 z1 z1 y1 y2 y1 z	z2 z2 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3
receive SUP_STATE/active/y receive SUP_STATE/active receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/prepared-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/confirmed-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd/y receive SUP_STATE/cancelled-rcvd receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known/y receive SUP_STATE/contradiction-known receive SUP_STATE/unknown			y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1 y1	y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2 y2	y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3 y3	y1 z y2 z1 y2 y2 y1 y1 z z z	y2 z1 y2 z1 y2 z1 y2 y2 z1 z1 z	y3 z2 z2 z1 z1 z1 z1 z1 z1 z1 z2
decide to resign decide to be prepared decide to be prepared/cancel decide to confirm autonomously decide to cancel autonomously apply ordered confirmation remove persistent information detect problem detect and record problem								
disruption I disruption II disruption III	e1	e2	z	z1	z			z

7 Persistent information

3780

3781 The BTP recovery mechanisms require that information is persisted by the BTP Actors that
3782 perform the Superior and Inferior roles. To ensure consistent application of the outcome, despite
3783 failures, the Inferior must persist some state information at the point of becoming prepared, and
3784 the Superior at the point of making a Confirm decision. If the Superior is a Sub-coordinator or
3785 Sub-composer, it must persist information when, as an Inferior, it becomes prepared. The
3786 minimum information to be persisted is the identifiers and addresses of the Peer Inferiors and
3787 Superior – the fact of the persistence being itself an indication of the preparedness or Confirm
3788 decision. However, BTP allows recovery of a Superior:Inferior relationship to occur in other cases
3789 – during the active phase, and before a Confirm decision has been made. Thus, in general, the
3790 BTP Actors will need to persist the current state of the relationships.

3791 Since BTP messages may carry application-specified qualifiers, which may need to be re-sent in
3792 the case of failure (because the first attempt got lost). BTP Actors should be prepared to persist
3793 such qualifiers as well.

3794 A Participant will normally also need to persist some information concerning the application work
3795 whose final or counter effect it is responsible for. The nature of this information is not considered
3796 further in this specification.

3797 Information to be persisted for an Inferior's "decision to be prepared" must be sufficient to re-
3798 establish communication with the Superior, to apply a Confirm decision and to apply a Cancel
3799 decision. It will thus need to include

3800 "superior-address"(as on CONTEXT as updated by REDIRECT)

3801 "superior-identifier" (as on CONTEXT)

3802 "default-is-cancel" value (as on PREPARED)

3803 A Superior must record corresponding information to allow it to re-establish communication with
3804 the Inferior. Thus, for each Inferior

3805 "inferior-address" (as on ENROL, as updated by REDIRECT)

3806 "inferior-identifier" (as on ENROL)

3807 In order to recover their own function, both Superior and Inferior will need to persist their own
3808 Identifier ("superior-identifier" and "inferior-identifier") and, depending on the implementation, may
3809 need to persist their original "superior-address" or "inferior-address".

8 XML representation of Message Set

This section describes the syntax for BTP messages in XML. These XML messages represent a midpoint between the abstract messages and what actually gets sent on the wire.

All URIs for the XML schemas defined by BTP are URLs starting "http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-". (Note that "business" and "transaction" are joined by a hyphen in the first instances (where it is a directory name on the OASIS server) and by an underscore in the second (where it is the technical committee name forming a single part of the document identification). The last part will identify the status of the document (working draft, committee draft, oasis standard). The schemas will usually be accessible by dereferencing that URL. (BTP 1.0 used URN-form URIs).

The XML Namespace for the BTP messages is:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-04.xsd

In addition to an XML schema, this specification uses an informal syntax to describe the structure of the BTP messages. The syntax appears as an XML instance, but the values contain data types instead of values. The following symbols are appended to some of the XML constructs: ? (zero or one), * (zero or more), + (one or more.) The absence of one of these symbols corresponds to "one and only one."

The Delivery Parameters are shown in the XML with a darker background.

8.1 Field types

8.1.1 Addresses

As described in the "Abstract Message and Associated Contracts – Addresses" section, a BTP Address comprises three parts, and for a "target-address" only the "additional information" field is inside the BTP messages. For all BTP messages whose abstract form includes a "target-address" parameter, the corresponding XML representation includes a "target-additional-information" element. This element may be omitted if it would be empty.

For other addresses, all three fields are represent, as in:

```
<btp:some-address priority="...value..."?>
  <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
  <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific address...</btp:binding-
address>
  <btp:additional-information>...optional additional addressing
information...</btp:additional-information> ?
</btp:some-address>
```

A "published" address can be a set of <some-address>, which are alternatives which can be chosen by the Peer (sender.) Multiple addresses are used in two cases: different bindings to same endpoint, or backup endpoints. In the former, the receiver of the message has the choice of which address to use (depending on which binding is preferable.) In the case where multiple addresses are used for redundancy, a priority attribute can be specified to help the receiver choose among the addresses- the address with the highest priority should be used, other things being equal. The priority is used as a hint and does not enforce any behaviour in the receiver of the message. The lower the value, the higher the priority. Default priority is a value of 1.

8.1.2 Qualifiers

The “Qualifier name” is used as the element name, within the namespace of the “Qualifier group”.

Examples:

```
<btpq:inferior-timeout
  xmlns:btpq="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd"
  xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-04.xsd"
  btp:must-be-understood="false"
  btp:to-be-propagated="false">1800</btpq:inferior-timeout>

<auth:username
  xmlns:auth="http://www.example.com/ns/auth"
  xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-
transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-04.xsd"
  btp:must-be-understood="true"
  btp:to-be-propagated="true">jtauber</auth:username>
```

Attributes **must-be-understood** has default value “true” and **to-be-propagated** has default value “false”.

8.1.3 Identifiers

Identifiers shall be URIs.

Note – Identifiers need to be globally unambiguous. Apart from their generation, the only operation the BTP implementations have to perform on identifiers is to match them.

8.1.4 Message References

Each BTP message has an optional **id** attribute to give it a unique identifier. An application can make use of those identifiers, but no processing is enforced.

8.2 Messages

Element content specified in **bold** is the default when the element is absent.

8.2.1 CONTEXT

```
<btp:context id?>
  <btp:superior-address priority?> +
    ...address...
  </btp:superior-address>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:superior-type>cohesion|atom</btp:superior-type> ?
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:reply-address> ?
    ...address...
  </btp:reply-address>
</btp:context>
```

8.2.2 CONTEXT_REPLY

```
<btp:context-reply id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
```

```

3900     <btp:completion-
3901 status>completed|incomplete|related|repudiated</btp:completion-status>
3902
3903     <btp:qualifiers> ?
3904     ...qualifiers...
3905 </btp:qualifiers>
3906 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3907     ...additional address information...
3908 </btp:target-additional-information>
3909 </btp:context-reply>

```

3910 8.2.3 REQUEST_STATUS

```

3911 <btp:request-status id?>
3912 <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
3913 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3914     ...qualifiers...
3915 </btp:qualifiers>
3916 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3917     ...additional address information...
3918 </btp:target-additional-information>
3919 <btp:reply-address> ?
3920     ...address...
3921 </btp:reply-address>
3922 </btp:request-status>

```

3923 8.2.4 STATUS

```

3924 <btp:status id?>
3925 <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
3926 <btp:status-value>created|enrolling|active|resigning|
3927     resigned|preparing|prepared|
3928     confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
3929     cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
3930     hazard|contradicted|unknown|inaccessible</btp:status-value>
3931 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3932     ...qualifiers...
3933 </btp:qualifiers>
3934 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3935     ...additional address information...
3936 </btp:target-additional-information>
3937 </btp:status>

```

3938 8.2.5 FAULT

```

3939 <btp:fault id?>
3940 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
3941 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
3942 <btp:fault-type>...fault type name...</btp:fault-type>
3943 <btp:fault-data>...fault data...</btp:fault-data> ?
3944 <btp:fault-text>...string data ...</btp:fault-text> ?
3945 <btp:qualifiers> ?
3946     ...qualifiers...
3947 </btp:qualifiers>
3948 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
3949     ...additional address information...
3950 </btp:target-additional-information>
3951 </btp:fault>

```

3952

3953 The following fault type names are represented by simple strings, corresponding to the entries
3954 defined in the abstract message set:

- 3955 • communication-failure
- 3956 • duplicate-inferior
- 3957 • general
- 3958 • invalid-decider
- 3959 • invalid-inferior
- 3960 • invalid-superior
- 3961 • status-refused
- 3962 • invalid-terminator
- 3963 • unknown-parameter
- 3964 • unknown-transaction
- 3965 • unsupported-qualifier
- 3966 • wrong-state
- 3967 • redirect

3968

3969 Revisions of this specification may add other fault type names, which shall be simple strings of
3970 letters, numbers and hyphens. If other specifications define fault type names to be used with
3971 BTP, the names shall be URIs.

3972 Fault data can take on various forms:

3973 Identifier:

3974

```
<btp:fault-data>...URI...</btp:fault-data>
```

3975

3976 Inferior Identity:

3977

```
<btp:fault-data>  
3978   <btp:inferior-address> +  
3979     ...address...  
3980   </btp:inferior-address>  
3981   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
3982 </btp:fault-data>
```

3983

3984 8.2.6 ENROL

3985

```
<btp:enrol id?>  
3986   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
3987   <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
3988   <btp:inferior-address priority?> +  
3989     ...address...  
3990   </btp:inferior-address>  
3991   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
3992   <btp:qualifiers> ?  
3993     ...qualifiers...  
3994   </btp:qualifiers>  
3995   <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
3996     ...additional address information...  
3997   </btp:target-additional-information>  
3998   <btp:reply-address> ?  
3999     ...address...
```

4000
4001

```
</btp:reply-address>  
</btp:enrol>
```

4002

8.2.7 ENROLLED

4003
4004
4005
4006
4007
4008
4009
4010
4011
4012
4013
4014

```
<btp:enrolled id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:enrolled>
```

4015

8.2.8 RESIGN

4016
4017
4018
4019
4020
4021
4022
4023
4024
4025
4026
4027
4028
4029

```
<btp:resign id?>  
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:resign>
```

4030

8.2.9 RESIGNED

4031
4032
4033
4034
4035
4036
4037
4038
4039
4040
4041
4042

```
<btp:resigned id?>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?  
    ...additional address information...  
</btp:target-additional-information>  
  <btp:sender-address> ?  
    ...address...  
</btp:sender-address>  
</btp:resigned>
```

4043

8.2.10 PREPARE

4044
4045
4046
4047
4048
4049
4050

```
<btp:prepare id?>  
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>  
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>  
  <btp:qualifiers> ?  
    ...qualifiers...  
</btp:qualifiers>  
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
```

```
4051     ...additional address information...
4052 </btp:target-additional-information>
4053 <btp:sender-address> ?
4054     ...address...
4055 </btp:sender-address>
4056 </btp:prepare>
```

8.2.11 PREPARED

```
4058 <btp:prepared id?>
4059   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4060   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4061   <btp:default-is-cancel>true|false</btp:default-is-cancel>
4062   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4063     ...qualifiers...
4064 </btp:qualifiers>
4065   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4066     ...additional address information...
4067 </btp:target-additional-information>
4068   <btp:sender-address> ?
4069     ...address...
4070 </btp:sender-address>
4071 </btp:prepared>
```

8.2.12 CONFIRM

```
4073 <btp:confirm id?>
4074   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4075   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4076   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4077     ...qualifiers...
4078 </btp:qualifiers>
4079   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4080     ...additional address information...
4081 </btp:target-additional-information>
4082   <btp:sender-address> ?
4083     ...address...
4084 </btp:sender-address>
4085 </btp:confirm>
```

8.2.13 CONFIRMED

```
4087 <btp:confirmed id?>
4088   <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4089   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4090   <btp:confirm-received>true|false</btp:confirm-received>
4091   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4092     ...qualifiers...
4093 </btp:qualifiers>
4094   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4095     ...additional address information...
4096 </btp:target-additional-information>
4097   <btp:sender-address> ?
4098     ...address...
4099 </btp:sender-address>
4100 </btp:confirmed>
```


8.2.14 CANCEL

```
<btp:cancel id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
    ...additional address information...
  </btp:target-additional-information>
  <btp:sender-address> ?
    ...address...
  </btp:sender-address>
</btp:cancel>
```

8.2.15 CANCELLED

```
<btp:cancelled id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> ?
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
    ...additional address information...
  </btp:target-additional-information>
  <btp:sender-address> ?
    ...address...
  </btp:sender-address>
</btp:cancelled>
```

8.2.16 CONFIRM_ONE_PHASE

```
<btp:confirm-one-phase id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
    ...additional address information...
  </btp:target-additional-information>
  <btp:sender-address> ?
    ...address...
  </btp:sender-address>
</btp:confirm-one-phase>
```

8.2.17 HAZARD

```
<btp:hazard id?>
  <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
  <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
  <btp:level>mixed|possible</btp:level>
  <btp:qualifiers> ?
    ...qualifiers...
  </btp:qualifiers>
  <btp:target-additional-information> ?
    ...additional address information...
  </btp:target-additional-information>
```

```
4154 <btp:sender-address> ?
4155 ...address...
4156 </btp:sender-address>
4157 </btp:hazard>
```

4158 8.2.18 CONTRADICTION

```
4159 <btp:contradiction id?>
4160 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4161 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4162 ...qualifiers...
4163 </btp:qualifiers>
4164 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4165 ...additional address information...
4166 </btp:target-additional-information>
4167 <btp:sender-address> ?
4168 ...address...
4169 </btp:sender-address>
4170 </btp:contradiction>
```

4171 8.2.19 SUPERIOR_STATE

```
4172 <btp:superior-state id?>
4173 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4174 <btp:status>active|prepared-received|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>
4175 <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?
4176 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4177 ...qualifiers...
4178 </btp:qualifiers>
4179 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4180 ...additional address information...
4181 </btp:target-additional-information>
4182 <btp:sender-address> ?
4183 ...address...
4184 </btp:sender-address>
4185 </btp:superior-state>
```

4186 8.2.20 INFERIOR_STATE

```
4187 <btp:inferior-state id?>
4188 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier>
4189 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4190 <btp:status>active|inaccessible|unknown</btp:status>
4191 <btp:response-requested>true|false</btp:response-requested> ?
4192 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4193 ...qualifiers...
4194 </btp:qualifiers>
4195 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4196 ...additional address information...
4197 </btp:target-additional-information>
4198 <btp:sender-address> ?
4199 ...address...
4200 </btp:sender-address>
4201 </btp:inferior-state>
```

4202 8.2.21 REDIRECT

```
4203 <btp:redirect id?>
4204 <btp:superior-identifier>...URI...</btp:superior-identifier> ?
```

```

4205 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4206 <btp:old-address> +
4207 ...address...
4208 </btp:old-address>
4209 <btp:new-address> +
4210 ...address...
4211 </btp:new-address priority?>
4212 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4213 ...qualifiers...
4214 </btp:qualifiers>
4215 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4216 ...additional address information...
4217 </btp:target-additional-information>
4218 </btp:redirect>

```

4219 8.2.22 BEGIN

```

4220 <btp:begin id?>
4221 <btp:transaction-type>cohesion|atom</btp:transaction-type>
4222 <btp:context> .. context content .. </btp:context> ?
4223 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4224 ...qualifiers...
4225 </btp:qualifiers>
4226 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4227 ...additional address information...
4228 </btp:target-additional-information>
4229 <btp:reply-address> ?
4230 ...address...
4231 </btp:reply-address>
4232 </btp:begin>

```

4233 8.2.23 BEGUN

```

4234 <btp:begun id?>
4235 <btp:decider-address priority?> *
4236 ...address...
4237 </btp:decider-address>
4238 <btp:inferior-address priority?> *
4239 ...address...
4240 </btp:inferior-address>
4241 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4242 <btp:context> .. context content .. </btp:context>
4243 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4244 ...qualifiers...
4245 </btp:qualifiers>
4246 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4247 ...additional address information...
4248 </btp:target-additional-information>
4249 </btp:begun>

```

4250 8.2.24 PREPARE_INFERIORS

```

4251 <btp:prepare-inferiors id?>
4252 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4253 <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4254 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4255 </btp:inferiors-list>
4256 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4257 ...qualifiers...
4258 </btp:qualifiers>

```

```

4259 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4260 ...additional address information...
4261 </btp:target-additional-information>
4262 <btp:reply-address> ?
4263 ...address...
4264 </btp:reply-address>
4265 </btp:prepare-inferiors>

```

8.2.25 CONFIRM_TRANSACTION

```

4267 <btp:confirm-transaction id?>
4268 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4269 <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4270 <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4271 </btp:inferiors-list>
4272 <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
4273 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4274 ...qualifiers...
4275 </btp:qualifiers>
4276 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4277 ...additional address information...
4278 </btp:target-additional-information>
4279 <btp:reply-address> ?
4280 ...address...
4281 </btp:reply-address>
4282 </btp:confirm-transaction>

```

8.2.26 TRANSACTION_CONFIRMED

```

4284 <btp:transaction-confirmed id?>
4285 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4286 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4287 ...qualifiers...
4288 </btp:qualifiers>
4289 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4290 ...additional address information...
4291 </btp:target-additional-information>
4292 </btp:transaction-confirmed>

```

8.2.27 CANCEL_TRANSACTION

```

4294 <btp:cancel-transaction id?>
4295 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4296 <btp:report-hazard>true|false</btp:report-hazard>
4297 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4298 ...qualifiers...
4299 </btp:qualifiers>
4300 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4301 ...additional address information...
4302 </btp:target-additional-information>
4303 <btp:reply-address> ?
4304 ...address...
4305 </btp:reply-address>
4306 </btp:cancel-transaction>

```

8.2.28 CANCEL_INFERIORS

```

4308 <btp:cancel-inferiors id?>
4309 <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>

```

```

4310 <btp:inferiors-list>
4311   <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4312 </btp:inferiors-list>
4313 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4314   ...qualifiers...
4315 </btp:qualifiers>
4316 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4317   ...additional address information...
4318 </btp:target-additional-information>
4319 <btp:reply-address> ?
4320   ...address...
4321 </btp:reply-address>
4322 </btp:cancel-inferiors>

```

4323 8.2.29 TRANSACTION_CANCELLED

```

4324 <btp:transaction-cancelled id?>
4325   <btp:transaction-identifier>...URI...</btp:transaction-identifier>
4326   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4327     ...qualifiers...
4328 </btp:qualifiers>
4329   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4330     ...additional address information...
4331 </btp:target-additional-information>
4332 </btp:transaction-cancelled>

```

4333 8.2.30 REQUEST_INFERIOR_STATUSES

```

4334 <btp:request-inferior-statuses id?>
4335   <btp:target-identifier>...URI...</btp:target-identifier>
4336   <btp:inferiors-list> ?
4337     <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier> +
4338   </btp:inferiors-list>
4339   <btp:qualifiers> ?
4340     ...qualifiers...
4341 </btp:qualifiers>
4342   <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4343     ...additional address information...
4344 </btp:target-additional-information>
4345   <btp:reply-address> ?
4346     ...address...
4347 </btp:reply-address>
4348 </btp:request-inferior-statuses>

```

4349 8.2.31 INFERIOR_STATUSES

```

4350 <btp:inferior-statuses id?>
4351   <btp:responders-identifier>...URI...</btp:responders-identifier>
4352   <btp:status-list>
4353     <btp:status-item> +
4354       <btp:inferior-identifier>...URI...</btp:inferior-identifier>
4355       <btp:status>active|resigned|preparing|prepared|
4356         autonomously-confirmed|autonomously-cancelled|
4357         confirming|confirmed|cancelling|cancelled|
4358         cancel-contradiction|confirm-contradiction|
4359         hazard|invalid</btp:status>
4360     <btp:qualifiers> ?
4361       ...qualifiers...
4362   </btp:qualifiers>
4363   </btp:status-item>

```

```

4364 </btp:status-list>
4365 <btp:qualifiers> ?
4366 ...qualifiers...
4367 </btp:qualifiers>
4368 <btp:target-additional-information> ?
4369 ...additional address information...
4370 </btp:target-additional-information>
4371 </btp:inferior-statuses>

```

4372 8.3 Standard qualifiers

4373 The informal syntax for these messages assumes the namespace prefix “btpq” is associated with
 4374 the URI “[http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd)
 4375 [schema-wd-04.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd)”.

4376 8.3.1 Transaction timelimit

```

4377 <btpq:transaction-timelimit>
4378 <btpq:timelimit>
4379 ...time in seconds...
4380 </btpq:timelimit>
4381 </btpq:transaction-timelimit>

```

4382 8.3.2 Inferior timeout

```

4383 <btpq:inferior-timeout>
4384 <btpq:timeout>
4385 ...time in seconds...
4386 </btpq:timeout>
4387 <btpq:intended-decision>confirm|cancel</btpq:intended-decision>
4388 </btpq:inferior-timeout>

```

4389 8.3.3 Minimum inferior timeout

```

4390 <btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>
4391 <btpq:minimum-timeout>
4392 ...time in seconds...
4393 </btpq:minimum-timeout>
4394 </btpq:minimum-inferior-timeout>

```

4395 8.3.4 Inferior name

```

4396 <btpq:inferior-name>
4397 <btpq:inferior-name>
4398 ...string...
4399 </btpq:inferior-name>
4400 </btpq:inferior-name>

```

4401 8.3.5 Cancel-on-zero-participants

```

4402 <btpq:cancel-on-zero-participants>
4403 <btpq:value>
4404 true|false
4405 </btpq:value>
4406 </btpq:cancel-on-zero-participants>

```

8.3.6 Expected-time-till-state-change

```
<btqp:expected-time-till-state-change>
  <btqp:expected-time>
    ...time in seconds...
  </btqp:expected-time>
</btqp: expected-time-till-state-change >
```

8.4 Compounding of Messages

Relating BTP to one another, in a “group” is represented by containing them within the `btp:related-group` element, with the related messages as child elements. The processing for the group is defined in the section “5.9 Groups – combinations of related messages”. For example

```
<btp:related-group>
  <btp:context-reply>
    ...<completion-status>related</completion-status> ...
  </btp:context-reply>
  <btp:enrol>...</btp:enrol>
  <btp:prepared>...</btp:prepared>
</btp:related-group>
```

If the rules for the group state that the “target-address” of the abstract message is omitted, the corresponding target-address-information element shall be absent in the message in the related-group. The Carrier Protocol binding specifies how a relation between application and BTP messages is represented.

Bundling (semantically insignificant combination) of BTP messages and related groups is indicated with the “`btp:messages`” element, with the bundled messages and related groups as child elements. For example (confirming one and cancelling another inferiors of a Cohesion):

```
<btp:messages>
  <btp:confirm>...</btp:confirm>
  <btp:cancel>...</btp:cancel>
</btp:messages>
```

8.5 XML Schemas

8.5.1 XML schema for BTP messages

The XML schema for the BTP messages, with namespace “http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-wd-04.xsd” is available at the same URL. This file is to be considered as an integral and normative part of this document.

8.5.2 XML schema for standard qualifiers

The XML schema for the standard qualifiers, with namespace http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-schema-wd-04.xsd available at the same URL. This file is to be considered as a integral and normative part of this document.

9 Carrier Protocol Bindings

The notion of bindings is introduced to act as the glue between the BTP messages and an underlying transport. A binding specification must define various particulars of how the BTP messages are carried and some aspects of how the related Application Messages are carried. This document specifies two bindings: a SOAP binding and a SOAP + Attachments binding. However, other bindings could be specified by the Oasis BTP technical committee or by a third party. For example, in the future a binding might exist to put a BTP message directly on top of HTTP without the use of SOAP, or a closed community could define their own binding. To ensure that such specifications are complete, the Binding Proforma defines the information that must be included in a binding specification.

A registry of bindings, with links to the binding specifications is maintained on the OASIS website, linked from the BTP page (<http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/business-transaction>). Any party may submit a binding specification and request its addition to this registry. The presence of an entry in the registry does not, of itself, imply ratification or approval by OASIS or the BTP Technical Committee.

9.1 Carrier Protocol Binding Proforma

A BTP carrier binding specification should provide the following information:

Binding name

A name for the binding, as used in the “binding name” field of BTP Addresses (and available for declaring the capabilities of an implementation). Binding specified in this document, and future revisions of this document have binding names that are simple strings of letters, numbers and hyphens (and, in particular, do not contain colons). Bindings specified elsewhere shall have binding names that are URIs. Bindings specified in this document use numbers to identify the version of the binding, not the version(s) of the Carrier Protocol.

Binding address format

This section states the format of the “binding address” field of a BTP Address for this binding. For many bindings, this will be a URL of some kind; for other bindings it may be some other form

BTP message representation

This section will define how BTP messages are represented. For many bindings, the BTP message syntax will be as specified in the XML schema defined in this document, and the normal string encoding of that XML will be used.

Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

This section will define how BTP messages that are not related to Application Messages are sent in either direction between Superior and Inferior (i.e. those messages sent directly between BTP Actors). This mapping need not be symmetric (i.e. Superior to Inferior may differ to some degree to Inferior to Superior). The mapping may define particular rules for particular BTP messages, or messages with particular parameter values (e.g. the FAULT message with “fault-type” “CommunicationFailure” will typically not be sent as a BTP message). The mapping states any constraints or requirements on which BTP may or must be bundled together by compounding.

Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

This section will define how BTP messages that are related to Application Messages are sent. A binding specification may defer details of this to a particular application (e.g. a mapping specification could just say “the CONTEXT may be carried as a parameter of an

4493 application invocation"). Alternatively, the binding may specify a general method that
4494 represents the relationship between application and BTP messages.

4495 **Implicit messages**

4496 This section specifies which BTP messages, if any, are not sent explicitly but are treated
4497 as implicit in carrier-protocol mechanisms, Application Messages or other BTP
4498 messages. This may depend on particular parameter values of the BTP messages or the
4499 Application Messages.

4500 **Faults**

4501 The relationship between the fault and exception reporting mechanisms of the Carrier
4502 Protocol and of BTP shall be defined. This may include definition of which Carrier
4503 Protocol exceptions are equivalent to a FAULT/communication-failure message.

4504 **Relationship to other bindings**

4505 Any relationship to other bindings is defined in this section. If BTP Addresses with
4506 different bindings are be considered to match (for purposes of identifying the Peer
4507 Superior/Inferior and redirection), this should be specified here.

4508 **Limitations on BTP use**

4509 Any limitations on the full range of BTP functionality that are imposed by use of this
4510 binding should be listed. This would include limitations on which messages can be sent,
4511 which event sequences are supported and restrictions on parameter values. Such
4512 limitations may reduce the usefulness of an implementation, but may be appropriate in
4513 certain environments.

4514 **Other**

4515 Other features of the binding, especially any that will potentially affect interoperation,
4516 should be specified here. This may include restrictions or requirements on the use or
4517 support of optional carrier parameters or mechanisms or use of standard or other
4518 qualifiers.

4519 **9.2 Bindings for request/response Carrier Protocols**

4520 BTP does not generally follow a request/response pattern. In particular, on the Outcome
4521 Relationship either side may initiate a message – this is an essential part of the presume-abort
4522 recovery paradigm although it is not limited to recovery cases. However, there are some BTP
4523 messages, especially in the Control Relationship, that do have a request/response pattern. Many
4524 (potential) Carrier Protocols (e.g. HTTP) do have a request/response pattern. The specification of
4525 a binding specification to a request/response Carrier Protocol needs to state what rules apply –
4526 which messages can be carried by requests, which by responses. The simplest rule is to send all
4527 BTP messages on requests, and let the carrier responses travel back empty. This would be
4528 inefficient in use of network resources, and possibly inconvenient when used for the BTP
4529 request/response pairs.

4530 This section defines a set of rules that allow more efficient use of the carrier, while allowing the
4531 initiator of a BTP request/response pair to ensure the BTP response is sent back on the carrier
4532 response. These rules are specified in this section to enable binding specifications to reference
4533 them, without requiring each binding specification to repeat similar information. These rules also
4534 allow the receiver of a message between Superior and Inferior (in either direction) on a Carrier
4535 Protocol request to send any reply message on the carrier response – the “sender-address” field
4536 is implicitly considered to be that of the sender of the carrier request.

4537 A binding to a request/response carrier is not required to use these rules. It may define other
4538 rules.

9.2.1 Request/response exploitation rules

These rules allow implementations to use the request and response of the Carrier Protocol efficiently, and, when a BTP request/response exchange occurs, to either treat the request/response exchanges of the Carrier Protocol and of BTP independently, if both sides wish, or allow either side to map them closely.

Under these rules, an implementation sending a BTP request (i.e. a message, other than CONTEXT, which has “reply-address” as a parameter in the abstract message definition) can ensure that it and the reply map to a carrier request/response by supplying no value for the “reply-address”. An implementation receiving such a request is required to send the BTP response on the carrier response.

Conversely, if an implementation does supply a “reply-address” value on the request, the receiver has the option of sending the BTP response back on the carrier response, or sending it on a new carrier request.

Within the Outcome Relationship, apart from ENROL, there is no “reply-address”, and the parties normally know each other’s “superior-address” and “inferior-address”. However, these messages have a “sender-address”, which is used when the receiver does not have knowledge of the Peer. In this case, the “sender-address” is treated as the “reply-address” of the other messages – if the field is absent in a message on a carrier request, the “sender-address” is implicitly that of the request sender. Any message for the Peer (including the three messages mentioned, but also FAULT and any other valid message in the Superior:Inferior relationship) may be sent on the carrier response. Apart from this, both sides are permitted to treat the carrier request/response exchanges as opportunities for sending messages to the appropriate destination.

The rules:

- a) A BTP Actor **may** bundle one or more BTP messages and related groups that have the same binding address for their target in a single btp:messages and transmit this btp:messages element on a Carrier Protocol request. There is no restriction on which combinations of messages and groups may be so bundled, other than that they have the same binding address, and that this binding address is usable as the destination of a Carrier Protocol request.
- b) A BTP Actor that has received a Carrier Protocol request to which it has not yet responded, and which has one or more BTP messages and groups whose binding address for the target matches the origin of the carrier request **may** bundle such BTP messages in a single btp:messages element and transmit that on the Carrier Protocol response.
- c) A BTP Actor that has received, on a Carrier Protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that require a BTP response and for which no “reply-address” was supplied, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a btp:messages element and transmit this element on the Carrier Protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request.
- d) A BTP Actor that has received, on a Carrier Protocol request, one or more BTP messages or related groups that, as abstract messages, have a “sender-address” parameter but no “reply-address” was supplied, and which does not have knowledge of the Peer address, **must** bundle the responding BTP message and groups in a btp:messages element and transmit this element on the Carrier Protocol response to the request that carried the BTP request. If the Actor does have knowledge of the Peer address it **may** send one or messages for the Peer in the Carrier Protocol response, regardless of whether the binding address of the Peer matches the address of the Carrier Protocol requestor.
- e) Where only one message or group is to be sent, it **must** be contained within a btp:messages element, as a bundle of one element.

- 4589 f) A BTP Actor that receives a Carrier Protocol request carrying BTP messages that do
4590 have a “reply-address”, or which initiate processing that produces BTP messages whose
4591 target binding address matches the origin of the request, **may** freely choose whether to
4592 use the Carrier Protocol response for the replies, or to send back an “empty Carrier
4593 Protocol response”, and send the BTP replies in a separately initiated Carrier Protocol
4594 request. The characteristics of an “empty Carrier Protocol response” shall be stated in the
4595 particular binding specification.
- 4596 g) A BTP Actor that sends BTP messages on a Carrier Protocol request **must** be able to
4597 accept returning BTP messages on the corresponding Carrier Protocol response and, if
4598 the Actor has offered an address on which it will receive carrier requests, must be able to
4599 accept “replying” BTP messages on a separate Carrier Protocol request.

4600 9.3 SOAP Binding

4601 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the **[SOAP 1.1]**
4602 specification, using the SOAP literal messaging style conventions. If no Application Message is
4603 sent at the same time, the BTP messages are contained within the SOAP Body element. If
4604 Application Messages are sent, the BTP messages are contained in the SOAP Header element.

4605 Binding name

4606 soap-http-1

4607 Binding address format

4608 shall be a URL, of scheme http or https.

4609 BTP message representation

4610 The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML schema defined in this
4611 document shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the SOAP message
4612 without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message); hence the
4613 encodingStyle attribute need not be set or can be set to an empty string.

4614 Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4615 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall be used.

4616 BTP messages sent on an HTTP request or HTTP response which is not carrying an
4617 Application Message, the messages are contained in a single btp:messages element
4618 which is the immediate child element of the SOAP Body element.

4619 An “empty Carrier Protocol response” sent after receiving an HTTP request containing a
4620 btp:messages element in the SOAP Body, when the implementation chooses just to reply
4621 at the lower level (and when the request/response exploitation rules allow an empty
4622 Carrier Protocol response), shall be any of:

- 4623 • an empty HTTP response
- 4624 • an HTTP response containing an empty SOAP Envelope
- 4625 • an HTTP response containing a SOAP Envelope containing a single, empty
4626 btp:messages element.

4627 The receiver (the initial sender of the HTTP request) shall treat these in the same way –
4628 they have no effect on the BTP sequence (other than indicating that the earlier sending
4629 did not cause a communication failure.)

4630 If an Application Message is being sent at the same time, the mapping for related
4631 messages shall be used, as if the BTP messages were related to the Application
4632 Message. (There is no ambiguity in whether the BTP messages are related, because
4633 only CONTEXT and ENROL can be related to an Application Message.)

4634 Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4635 All BTP messages sent with an Application Message, whether related to the Application
 4636 Message or not, shall be sent in a single `btpr:messages` element in the SOAP Header.
 4637 There shall be precisely one `btpr:messages` element in the SOAP Header.

4638 The “request/response exploitation” rules shall apply to the BTP messages carried in the
 4639 SOAP Header, as if they had been carried in a SOAP Body, unrelated to an Application
 4640 Message, sent to the same binding address.

4641 *Note 1 – The Application Protocol itself (which is using the SOAP Body) may use the*
 4642 *SOAP RPC or document approach – this is determined by the application.*

4643 Only CONTEXT and ENROL messages are related (&) to Application Messages. If there
 4644 is only one CONTEXT or one ENROL message present in the SOAP Header, it is
 4645 assumed to be related to the whole of the Application Message in the SOAP Body. If
 4646 there are multiple CONTEXT or ENROL messages, any relation of these BTP messages
 4647 shall be indicated by application specific means.

4648 *Note 2 – An Application Protocol could use references to the ID values of the BTP*
 4649 *messages to indicate relation between BTP CONTEXT or ENROL messages and the*
 4650 *Application Message.*

4651 *Note 3 -- However indicated, what the relatedness means, or even whether it has any*
 4652 *significance at all, is a matter for the application.*

4653 **Implicit messages**

4654 A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a SOAP request
 4655 that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a
 4656 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other”
 4657 about the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4658 **Faults**

4659 A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as
 4660 FAULT/communication-failure.

4661 **Relationship to other bindings**

4662 A BTP Address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding string “soap-http-1” is
 4663 considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-http-1” if the
 4664 binding address and additional information fields match.

4665 **Limitations on BTP use**

4666 None

4667 **Other**

4668 The SOAP BTP binding does not make use of SOAPAction HTTP header or actor
 4669 attribute. The SOAPAction HTTP header is left to be application specific when there are
 4670 Application Messages in the SOAP Body, as an already existing web service that is being
 4671 upgraded to use BTP might have already made use of SOAPAction. The SOAPAction
 4672 HTTP header shall contain no value when the SOAP message carries only BTP
 4673 messages in the SOAP Body.

4674 The SOAP mustUnderstand attribute, when used on the `btpr:messages` containing a BTP
 4675 CONTEXT, ensures that the receiver (server, as a whole) supports BTP sufficiently to
 4676 determine whether any enrolments are necessary and replies with CONTEXT_REPLY as
 4677 appropriate. The sender of the CONTEXT (and related Application Message) can use this
 4678 to ensure that the application work is performed as part of the Business Transaction,
 4679 assuming the receiver’s SOAP implementation supports the mustUnderstand attribute. If
 4680 mustUnderstand is false, a receiver can ignore the CONTEXT (if BTP is not supported
 4681 there), and no CONTEXT_REPLY will be returned. It is a local option on the sender
 4682 (Client) side whether the absence of a CONTEXT_REPLY is assumed to be equivalent to

4683 a CONTEXT_REPLY/ok (and the Business Transaction is allowed to proceed to
4684 confirmation).

4685 *Note – some SOAP implementations may not support the mustUnderstand attribute*
4686 *sufficiently to enforce these requirements.*

4687 9.3.1 Example scenario using SOAP binding

4688 The example below shows an application request with CONTEXT message sent from
4689 client.example.com (which includes the Superior) to services.example.com (Service).

```
4690 <soap:Envelope
4691     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
4692     soap:encodingStyle="">
4693   <soap:Header>
4694     <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-
4695 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-
4696 wd-04.xsd">
4697       <btp:context>
4698         <btp:superior-address>
4699           <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4700           <btp:binding-
4701 address>http://client.example.com/soaphandler</btp:binding-address>
4702           <btp:additional-information>btpengine</btp:additional-
4703 information>
4704         </btp:superior-address>
4705         <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-
4706 identifier>
4707         <btp:superior-type>atom</btp:superior-type>
4708         <btp:qualifiers>
4709           <btpq:transaction-timelimit xmlns:btpq=" http://docs.oasis-
4710 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-qualifiers-
4711 schema-wd-
4712 04.xsd"><btpq:timelimit>1800</btpq:timelimit></btpq:transaction-
4713 timelimit>
4714         </btp:qualifiers>
4715       </btp:context>
4716     </btp:messages>
4717   </soap:Header>
4718   <soap:Body>
4719     <ns1:orderGoods
4720 xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods">
4721       <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
4722       <itemID>224352</itemID>
4723       <quantity>5</quantity>
4724     </ns1:orderGoods>
4725   </soap:Body>
4726 </soap:Envelope>
```

4727

4728 The example below shows CONTEXT_REPLY and a related ENROL message sent from
4729 services.example.com to client.example.com, in reply to the previous message. There is no
4730 application response, so the BTP messages are in the SOAP Body. The ENROL message does
4731 not contain the target-additional-information, since the grouping rules for CONTEXT_REPLY &
4732 ENROL omit the "target-address" (the receiver of this example remembers the superior address
4733 from the original CONTEXT)

```
4734 <soap:Envelope
4735     xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
4736     soap:encodingStyle="">
4737   <soap:Header>
4738   </soap:Header>
4739   <soap:Body>
```

```

4740      <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-
4741 open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-
4742 wd-04.xsd">
4743      <btp:related-group>
4744      <btp:context-reply>
4745      <btp:target-additional-information>btpengine</btp:target-
4746 additional-information>
4747      <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-
4748 identifier>
4749      <completion-status>related</completion-status>
4750      </btp:context-reply>
4751      <btp:enrol>
4752      <btp:superior-
4753 identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-identifier>
4754      <btp:response-requested>false</btp:response-requested>
4755      <btp:inferior-address>
4756      <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4757      <btp:binding-address>
4758      http://services.example.com/soaphandler
4759      </btp:binding-address>
4760      </btp:inferior-address>
4761      <btp:inferior-identifier>
4762      http://example.com/AAAB
4763      </btp:inferior-identifier>
4764      <btp:target-additional-information>btpengine</btp:target-
4765 additional-information>
4766      </btp:enrol>
4767      </btp:related-group>
4768      </btp:messages>
4769      </soap:Body>
4770      </soap:Envelope>

```

4771

4772 9.4 SOAP + Attachments Binding

4773 This binding describes how BTP messages will be carried using SOAP as in the **[SOAP**
4774 **Attachments]** specification. It is a superset of the Basic SOAP binding, soap-http-1. The two
4775 bindings only differ when Application Messages are sent.

4776 Binding name

4777 soap-attachments-http-1

4778 Binding address format

4779 as for soap-http-1

4780 BTP message representation

4781 As for soap-http-1

4782 Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4783 As for "soap-http-1", except the SOAP Envelope containing the SOAP Body containing
4784 the BTP messages shall be in a MIME body part, as specified in SOAP Messages with
4785 Attachments specification. If an Application Message is being sent at the same time, the
4786 mapping for related messages for this binding shall be used, as if the BTP messages
4787 were related to the Application Message(s).

4788 Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4789 MIME packaging shall be used. One of the MIME multipart/related parts shall contain a
4790 SOAP Envelope, whose SOAP Headers element shall contain precisely one
4791 btp:messages element, containing any BTP messages. Any BTP CONTEXT in the
4792 btp:messages is considered to be related to the Application Message(s) in the SOAP

4793 Body, and to also any of the MIME parts referenced from the SOAP Body (using the
4794 “href” attribute).

4795 **Implicit messages**

4796 As for soap-http-1.

4797 **Faults**

4798 As for soap-http-1.

4799 **Relationship to other bindings**

4800 A BTP Address for Superior or Inferior that has the binding string “soap-http-1” is
4801 considered to match one that has the binding string “soap-attachments-http-1” if the
4802 binding address and additional information fields match.

4803 **Limitations on BTP use**

4804 None

4805 **Other**

4806 As for soap-http-1

4807 **9.4.1 Example using SOAP + Attachments binding**

```
4808   Content-Type: Multipart/Related; boundary=MIME_boundary; type=text/xml;
4809       start="someID"
4810   --MIME_boundary
4811   Content-Type: text/xml; charset=UTF-8
4812   Content-ID: someID
4813   <?xml version='1.0' ?>
4814   <soap:Envelope
4815       xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
4816       soap:encodingStyle=" "
4817       <soap:Header
4818           <btp:messages xmlns:btp="http://docs.oasis-
4819   open.org/business_transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-core-schema-
4820   wd-04.xsd">
4821       <btp:context>
4822           <btp:superior-address>
4823               <btp:binding>soap-http-1</btp:binding>
4824               <btp:binding-address>
4825                   http://client.example.com/soaphandler
4826               </btp:binding-address>
4827               </btp:superior-address>
4828               <btp:superior-identifier>http://example.com/1001</btp:superior-
4829   identifier>
4830               <btp:superior-type>atom</btp:superior-type>
4831           </btp:context>
4832       </btp:messages>
4833       </soap:Header>
4834       <soap:Body>
4835           <orderGoods href="cid:anotherID"/>
4836       </soap:Body>
4837   </soap:Envelope>
4838   --MIME_boundary
4839   Content-Type: text/xml
4840   Content-ID: anotherID
4841   <ns1:orderGoods
4842       xmlns:ns1="http://example.com/2001/Services/xyzgoods"
4843       <custID>ABC8329045</custID>
4844       <itemID>224352</itemID>
4845       <quantity>5</quantity>
4846   </ns1:orderGoods>
```

4847
4848
4849

--MIME_boundary--

4850 9.5 11.5 WSDL-friendly one-way binding

4851 This binding avoids any compounding, placing one message in each HTTP request. All
4852 messages are transmitted in the same way – the request/response exploitation rules are not
4853 used. This makes it straight-forward to represent the BTP protocol using WSDL, as constrained
4854 by the **[WS-I Basic Profile 1.0]**.

4855 Binding name

4856 wsdl-friendly-one-way-1

4857 Binding address format

4858 shall be a URL, of type HTTP or HTTPS.

4859 BTP message representation

4860 The string representation of the XML, as specified in the XML schema referenced by the
4861 BTP 1.1 spec shall be used. The BTP XML messages are embedded in the SOAP
4862 message without the use of any specific encoding rules (literal style SOAP message).

4863 *Note -- the btp:messages and btp:related-group elements are NOT used in this binding.*

4864 Mapping for BTP messages (unrelated)

4865 A single BTP message shall be sent as the sole child-element of Body of a SOAP
4866 message sent on an HTTP request. (only). The HTTP response shall be empty or shall
4867 contain an empty SOAP message.

4868 BTP FAULT messages are sent in the same way as other BTP messages, as the sole
4869 child-element of a SOAP Body.

4870 Mapping for BTP messages related to Application Messages

4871 When the association between a BTP CONTEXT, CONTEXT-REPLY or ENROL
4872 message and an Application Message is to be represented by the SOAP layer, the BTP
4873 message shall be an immediate child of the SOAP Header element (i.e. it shall be a
4874 header in its own right). There may be more than one BTP message as a child element of
4875 the SOAP Header element. (The association may be represented by other means, such
4876 as embedding the BTP message in the application message – this would be invisible to
4877 this binding).

4878 A CONTEXT-REPLY message appearing in a SOAP header shall be deemed to be in a
4879 (abstract) related group with any ENROL messages with the same superior-identifier in
4880 the SOAP message.

4881 Implicit messages

4882 A SOAP FAULT, or other communication failure received in response to a SOAP request
4883 that had a CONTEXT in the SOAP Header shall be treated as if a
4884 CONTEXT_REPLY/repudiated had been received. See also the discussion under “other”
4885 about the SOAP mustUnderstand attribute.

4886 Faults

4887 A SOAP FAULT or other communication failure shall be treated as
4888 FAULT/communication-failure.

4889 Relationship to other bindings

4890 None

4891 Limitations on BTP use

4892 Bundling is not supported in this binding – BTP messages that are not semantically
 4893 related have to be sent on separate HTTP requests.

4894 Related-grouping is not supported in this binding for BTP messages to be sent in the
 4895 SOAP Body (i.e. other than in combination with application messages) and only
 4896 CONTEXT, CONTEXT-REPLY and ENROL can be related when sent in the header.

4897 **Other**

4898 An implementation or service may offer this binding in all its roles or could use this
 4899 binding on some and other bindings on other roles (e.g this binding as Factory and
 4900 Decider, soap-http-1 as Superior and Inferior). It may also use this binding for the
 4901 actor:actor relationships and some other binding when sending BTP messages
 4902 associated with application messages. In this latter case, the “binding” could be a part of
 4903 the application protocol specification and need not be identified as a distinct BTP binding
 4904 in any way.

4905 WSDL specifications with the target namespaces -

4906 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-abstract-wsdl-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-abstract-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)
 4907 [wd-04.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-abstract-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)

4908 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_binding-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_binding-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)
 4909 [wsdl-wd-04.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_binding-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)

4910 • [http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_services-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_services-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)
 4911 [wsdl-wd-04.wsdl](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-soap_services-wsdl-wd-04.wsdl)

4912 - accessible at those URLs, are intended to correspond to this binding. These wsdl documents
 4913 form an integral but informative part of this specification. The three documents are:

4914 • Abstract WSDL definitions of porttypes corresponding to the roles defined in BTP

4915 • SOAP bindings to ports for each of these PortTypes

4916 • Partial Service definitions for the combinations of Ports that will typically be combined. They
 4917 are partial because they do not include target addresses

10Conformance

A BTP implementation need not implement all aspects of the protocol to be useful. The level of conformance of an implementation is defined by which roles it can support using the specified messages and Carrier Protocol bindings for interoperation with other implementations.

An implementation may implement some roles and relationships in accordance with this specification, while providing the (approximate) functionality of other roles in some other manner. (For example, an implementation might provide an equivalent of the Control Relationships using a language-specific API, but support roles involved in the Outcome Relationships using standard BTP messages.) Such an implementation is conformant in respect of the roles it does implement in accordance with this specification.

An implementation can state which aspects of the BTP specification it conforms to in terms of which Roles it supports. Since most Roles cannot usefully be supported in isolation, the following Role Groups can be used to describe implementation capabilities:

Role Group	Roles
Initiator/Terminator	Initiator Terminator
Cohesive Hub	Factory Composer (as Decider and Superior) Coordinator (as Decider and Superior) Sub-composer Sub-coordinator
Atomic Hub	Factory Coordinator Sub-coordinator
Cohesive Superior	Composer (as Superior only) Sub-Composer Coordinator (as Superior only) Sub-coordinator
Atomic Superior	Coordinator (as Superior only)) Sub-coordinator
Participant	Inferior Enroller

The Role Groups occupy different positions within a Business Transaction Tree and thus require presence of implementations supporting other Role Groups:

- Initiator/Terminator uses Control Relationship to Atomic Hub or Cohesive Hub to initiate and control Atoms or Cohesions. Initiator/Terminator would typically be a library linked with application software.
- Atomic Hub and Cohesive Hub would often be standalone servers.

- 4938 • Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior would provide the equivalent of Initiator/Terminator
4939 functionality by internal or proprietary means.
- 4940 • Cohesive Hubs, Atomic Hubs, Cohesive Superior and Atomic Superior use Outcome
4941 Relationships to Participants and to each other.
- 4942 • Participants will establish Outcome Relationships to implementations of any of the other Role
4943 Groups except Initiator/Terminator. A Participant “covers” a resource or application work of
4944 some kind. It should be noted that a Participant is unaffected by whether it is enrolled in an
4945 Atom or Cohesion – it gets only a single outcome.
- 4946 An implementation may support one or more Role Groups. The following combinations are
4947 defined as commonly expected conformance profiles, although other combinations or selections
4948 are equally possible.

Conformance Profile	Role Groups
Participant Only	Participant
Atomic	Atomic Superior Participant
Cohesive	Cohesive Superior Participant
Atomic Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Atomic Hub Participant
Cohesive Coordination Hub	Initiator/Terminator Cohesive Hub Participant

- 4949
- 4950 BTP has several features, such as optional parameters, that allow alternative implementation
4951 architectures. Implementations should pay particular attention to avoid assuming their peers have
4952 made the same implementation options as they have (e.g. an implementation that always sends
4953 ENROL with the same inferior address and with the “reply-address” absent (because the Inferior
4954 in all transactions are dealt with by the same addressable entity), must not assume that the same
4955 is true of received ENROLS)

11 References

11.1 Normative

- [RFC2119]** S. Bradner, *Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.
- [SOAP 1.1]** D. Box et al, *Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) 1.1*, <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap/>, W3C Note, May 2000
- [SOAP Attachments]** J.J.Barton, S. Thatte, H.F.Nielsen, *SOAP Messages with Attachments*, <http://www.w3.org/TR/SOAP-attachments>, W3C Note, December 2000
- [WS-I Basic Profile 1.0]** K.Ballinger et al, *Basic Profile Version 1.0*, <http://www.ws-i.org/Profiles/BasicProfile-1.0.html>, WS-I, April 2004

Appendix A. Acknowledgments

The following individuals were members of the committee during the development of this specification. Where members changed their affiliation, their latest affiliation is shown:

- Mark Little, Arjuna Technology Ltd.
- William Cox, BEA Systems, Inc.
- Sanjay Dalal, BEA Systems, Inc.
- Pal Takacs-Nagy, BEA Systems, Inc.
- Rocky Stewart, BEA Systems, Inc.
- Sazi Temel, BEA Systems, Inc.
- Ed Felt, BEA Systems, Inc.
- James Tauber, mValent
- Tony Fletcher, Choreology Ltd
- Peter Furniss, Choreology Ltd
- Alastair Green, Choreology Ltd
- Bob Haugen, Choreology Ltd
- Roddy Herries, Choreology Ltd
- Mike Abbott, CodeMetamorphosis
- Alex Berson, Entrust, Inc
- Victor Corrales, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- Savas Parastatidis, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- Jim Webber, Hewlett-Packard Co.
- Fred Carter, individual (previously Sun Microsystems)
- Alex Ceponkus, individual (previously Bowstreet)
- Bill Pope, individual (previously Bowstreet)
- Gordon Hamilton, individual (previously Applied Theory)
- Steve Viens, individual
- Mark Hale, Interwoven Inc.
- Pyounguk Cho, Iona
- Hatem El-Sebaaly, IPNet
- Geoff Brown, Oracle
- Martin Chapman, Oracle
- Anne Manes, Systinet
- Alan Davies, SeeBeyond Inc.
- Steve White, SeeBeyond Inc.
- Doug Bunting, Sun Microsystems
- Bill Flood, Sybase
- Mark Potts, Talking Blocks

In memory of Ed Felt

Ed Felt of BEA Systems Inc. was an active and highly valued contributor to the work of the OASIS Business Transactions Technical Committee.

His many years of design and implementation experience with the Tuxedo system, WebLogic's Java transactions, and Weblogic Integration's Conversation Management Protocol were brought to bear in his comments on and proposals for this specification.

He was killed in the crash of the hijacked United Airlines flight 93 near Pittsburgh, on 11 September 2001.

Appendix B. Revision History

Rev	Version	Date	By Whom	What
	BTP 1.0	2002-06-03	BT TC	Committee Specification BTP 1.0
wd-01	1.0.9.1	2004-05-05	Peter Furniss	Included all agreed technical changes of that date, change-marked by issue
wd-02	1.0.9.2	2004-08-27	Peter Furniss	Included all agreed technical changes of that date, change-marked by issue
wd-03	1.0.9.3	2004-09-28	Peter Furniss	Previous changes accepted, and new agreed and proposed technical changes applied, up to and including maint-17. XML schemas moved to separate documents
wd-04	1.0.9.4	2004-10-25	Peter Furniss, Bob Haugen	Changed to OASIS template, copying the text in and modifying the non-technical sections; reviewed Part 1 and aligned with agreed changes in Part 2

Appendix C. Notices

5016

5017 OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights
5018 that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this
5019 document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available;
5020 neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on
5021 OASIS's procedures with respect to rights in OASIS specifications can be found at the OASIS
5022 website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses
5023 to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission
5024 for the use of such proprietary rights by implementors or users of this specification, can be
5025 obtained from the OASIS Executive Director.

5026 OASIS invites any interested party to bring to its attention any copyrights, patents or patent
5027 applications, or other proprietary rights which may cover technology that may be required to
5028 implement this specification. Please address the information to the OASIS Executive Director.

5029 Copyright © OASIS Open 2002, 2003, 2004. *All Rights Reserved.*

5030 This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works
5031 that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied,
5032 published and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the
5033 above copyright notice and this paragraph are included on all such copies and derivative works.
5034 However, this document itself does not be modified in any way, such as by removing the
5035 copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing OASIS
5036 specifications, in which case the procedures for copyrights defined in the OASIS Intellectual
5037 Property Rights document must be followed, or as required to translate it into languages other
5038 than English.

5039 The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its
5040 successors or assigns.

5041 This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS
5042 DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO
5043 ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY
5044 RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A
5045 PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Appendix D. Node State Information Serialisation

This Appendix is informational.

This Appendix provides a simple, but standardized, format for the serialised essential state information of a BTP Node. It does not specify the events that would cause serialisation to take place, nor does it specify how this serialisation format is extracted from a BTP Node and transferred elsewhere. The format is specified in abstract form and as an XML Schema.

D.1 Abstract Format for Node State Information

The node state information represents the BTP state information for a single BTP Node in some Transaction Tree. It contains information for a single transaction that was extant at the BTP Node at the time the serialisation was performed.

Parameter	Sub-Parameter	Type
date and time		Date and Time
	Role	composer/coordinator/sub-composer/sub-coordinator/participant
own information	transaction type	cohesion/atom
	own-identifier	Identifier
	own-address	Set of BTP Addresses
information as inferior	transaction type	cohesion/atom
	inferior-state-identification	State identifier
	superior's identifier	Identifier
	superior's address	Set of BTP Addresses
	Qualifiers	List of qualifiers
Set of information as superior	superior-state-identification	State identifier
	inferior's identifier	Identifier
	inferior's address	Set of BTP Addresses
	Qualifiers	List of qualifiers

date and time

the date and time that this node state information was generated to an agreed resolution and accuracy. The presence of this information is optional.

role

5061 the type of the BTP Node. Its value is one of composer / coordinator / sub-composer /
5062 sub-coordinator / participant.

5063 **own information**

5064 identification information for this BTP Node. This information is required. It consists of
5065 the following information:

5066 **transaction type**

5067 the type of this part of the transaction propagated to inferiors. Its value is one of
5068 cohesion or atom.

5069 **own identifier**

5070 identifies this BTP Node. This may be the superior identifier from the CONTEXT
5071 for the node and/or the inferior identifier on the ENROL for the node. This shall
5072 be globally unambiguous.

5073 **own address**

5074 the address at which this BTP Node may be accessible. This can be a set of
5075 alternative addresses.

5076 **information as inferior**

5077 information relevant to the BTP Node's Role as an inferior. Should be present, once
5078 only, if the BTP Node is a sub-composer or a sub-coordinator or a participant, otherwise
5079 absent. It includes information about the superior of this BTP Node and consists of the
5080 following information:

5081 **transaction type**

5082 the type of this part of the transaction that applies to the BTP Node acting as an
5083 inferior as indicated in the CONTEXT for the BTP Node. Its value is one of
5084 cohesion or atom.

5085 **inferior-state-identification**

5086 identifies the state of the inferior state machine at this BTP Node. This is
5087 represented as a small letter followed by a number, which designates the inferior
5088 state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular Tables 6 and 12 -
5089 17.

5090 **superior's identifier**

5091 identifies the Superior of this BTP Node. This shall be globally unambiguous.

5092 **superior's address**

5093 the address to which ENROL and other messages from this enrolled Inferior were
5094 sent. This can be a set of alternative addresses.

5095 **qualifiers**

5096 list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this node as an inferior.

5097 **set of information as superior**

5098 information relevant to the node's Role as superior. Should be present, if the BTP Node
5099 is a composer, coordinator, sub-composer, or a sub-coordinator, and shall be absent if
5100 the BTP Node is a participant. It may be present multiple times, once for each inferior
5101 that this BTP Node has a relationship with. It includes information about an inferior of this
5102 node and consists of the following information:

5103 **superior-state-identification**

5104 identifies the state of the superior state machine for this particular inferior. This is
5105 represented as a capital letter followed by a number, which designates the

5106 superior state. Refer to the section on 'State Tables' and in particular Tables 5
5107 and 7 - 11.

5108 **inferior's identifier**

5109 identifies an Inferior of this BTP Node. This shall be globally unambiguous.

5110 **inferior's address**

5111 the address to which PREPARE, CONFIRM, CANCEL and SUPERIOR_STATE
5112 messages for this Inferior have been or are to be sent. This can be a set of
5113 alternative addresses.

5114 **qualifiers**

5115 list of the qualifiers and their values in force for this BTP Node as superior to this
5116 inferior.

5117 D.2 Informal XML for Node State Information

```

5118 <btpst:node-information>
5119
5120   <btpst:date-time>2002-05-31T13:20:00.000-05:00</btpst:date-time> ?
5121
5122   <btpst:role>composer|coordinator|sub-composer|
5123     sub-coordinator|participant</btpst:role> ?
5124
5125   <btpst:own-information>
5126     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5127     <btpst:own-identifier>...URI...</btpst:own-identifier>
5128     <btpst:own-address> +
5129       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5130       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5131         address...</btp:binding-address>
5132       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5133         addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5134     </btpst:own-address>
5135   </btpst:own-information>
5136
5137   <btpst:information-as-inferior> ?
5138     <btpst:trx-type>cohesion|atom</btpst:trx-type>
5139     <btpst:I_state>.. statename from inferior state table
5140       e.g. dl..</btpst:I_state>
5141     <btpst:superiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:superiors-identifier>
5142     <btpst:superiors-address> +
5143       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5144       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5145         address...</btp:binding-address>
5146       <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5147         addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?
5148     </btpst:superiors-address>
5149     <btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?
5150   </btpst:information-as-inferior>
5151
5152   <btpst:information-as-superior> +
5153     <btpst:S_state>.. statename from superior state table
5154       e.g. Dl..</btpst:S_state>
5155     <btpst:inferiors-identifier>...URI...</btpst:inferiors-identifier>
5156     <btpst:inferiors-address> +
5157       <btp:binding-name>...carrier binding name...</btp:binding-name>
5158       <btp:binding-address>...carrier specific
5159         address...</btp:binding-address>
5160     <btp:additional-information>...optional additional
5161       addressing information...</btp:additional-information> ?

```

```
5162     </btpst:inferiors-address>
5163     <btp:qualifiers> ...qualifiers... </btp:qualifiers> ?
5164 </btpst:information-as-superior>
5165
5166 </btpst:node-information>
```

5167 **D.3 XML schema for Node State Information**

5168 The XML schema for the Node State Information, with namespace "[http://docs.oasis-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-04.xsd)
5169 [open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-04.xsd)
5170 [04.xsd](http://docs.oasis-open.org/business-transaction/business_transaction-btp-1.1-node-state-information-schema-wd-04.xsd)" is available at same URL. That schema document is to be considered as an integral part
5171 of this informative annex.

5172